



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Chapter 1a

Propositional Logic Review I

Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 1** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

**Nguyen An Khuong,
Tran Van Hoai,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Lê Hồng Trang**

*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*

Contents

① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Excursion: Intuitionistic Logic

③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form





Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

- ① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences
- ② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction
- ③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language
- ④ Semantics of Propositional Logic
- ⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form

Propositional Calculus

Study of atomic propositions

Propositions are built from sentences whose internal structure is not of concern.

Building propositions

Boolean operators are used to construct propositions out of simpler propositions.

Example for Propositional Calculus

- **Atomic proposition:** One plus one equals two.
- **Atomic proposition:** The earth revolves around the sun.
- **Combined proposition:** One plus one equals two *and* the earth revolves around the sun.



Goals and Main Result of Propositional Calculus



Meaning of formula

Associate meaning to a set of formulas by assigning a value *true* or *false* to every formula in the set.

Proofs

Symbol sequence that formally establishes whether a formula is always true.

Soundness and completeness

The set of provable formulas is the same as the set of formulas which are always true.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Uses of Propositional Calculus

Hardware design

The production of logic circuits uses propositional calculus at all phases; specification, design, testing.

Verification

Verification of hardware and software makes extensive use of propositional calculus.

Problem solving

Decision problems (scheduling, timetabling, etc) can be expressed as satisfiability problems in propositional calculus.



Predicate Calculus: Central ideas

Richer language

Instead of dealing with atomic propositions, predicate calculus provides the formulation of statements involving sets, functions and relations on these sets.

Quantifiers

Predicate calculus provides statements that all or some elements of a set have specified properties.

Compositionality

Similar to propositional calculus, formulas can be built from composites using logical connectives.



The uses of Predicate Calculus

Programming Language Semantics

The meaning of programs such as

$$\text{if } x \geq 0 \text{ then } y := \text{sqrt}(x) \text{ else } y := \text{abs}(x)$$

can be captured with formulas of predicate calculus:

$$\forall x \forall y (x' = x \wedge (x \geq 0 \rightarrow y' = \sqrt{x}) \wedge (\neg(x \geq 0) \rightarrow y' = |x|))$$

Other Uses of Predicate Calculus

- **Specification:** Formally specify the purpose of a program in order to serve as input for software design,
- **Verification:** Prove the correctness of a program with respect to its specification.



An Example for Specification

Let P be a program of the form

```
while a <> b do  
  if a > b then a := a - b else a := b - a;
```

The specification of the program is given by the formula

$$\{a \geq 0 \wedge b \geq 0\} P \{a = \gcd(a, b)\}$$



Logic in Theorem Proving, Logic Programming, and Other Systems of Logic

Theorem proving

Formal logic has been used to design programs that can automatically prove mathematical theorems.

Logic programming

Research in theorem proving has led to an efficient way of proving formulas in predicate calculus, called *resolution*, which forms the basis for *logic programming*.

Some Other Systems of Logic

- **Three-valued logic:** A third truth value (denoting “don’t know” or “undetermined”) is often useful.
- **Intuitionistic logic:** A mathematical object is accepted only if a finite construction can be given for it.
- **Temporal logic:** Integrates time-dependent constructs such as (“always” and “eventually”) explicitly into a logic framework; useful for reasoning about real-time systems.





Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

1 Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

2 Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

3 Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

4 Semantics of Propositional Logic

5 Conjunctive Normal Form

Declarative Sentences

The language of propositional logic is based on *propositions* or *declarative sentences*.

Declarative Sentences

Sentences which one can—in principle—argue as being true or false.

Examples

- ① The sum of the numbers 3 and 5 equals 8.
- ② Jane reacted violently to Jack's accusations.
- ③ Every natural number > 2 is the sum of two prime numbers.
- ④ All Martians like pepperoni on their pizza.

Not Examples

- Could you please pass me the salt?
- Ready, steady, go!
- May fortune come your way.



Putting Propositions Together

Example 1.1

*If the train arrives late and
there are no taxis at the station then
John is late for his meeting.*

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

Example 1.2

*If it is raining and
Jane does not have her umbrella with her then
she will get wet.*

Jane is not wet.

It is raining.

Therefore, Jane has her umbrella with her.



Focus on Structure

We are primarily concerned about the structure of arguments in this class, not the validity of statements in a particular domain.

We therefore simply abbreviate sentences by letters such as p , q , r , p_1 , p_2 etc.

From Concrete Propositions to Letters - Example 1.1

*If the train arrives late and
there are no taxis at the station then
John is late for his meeting.*

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

becomes

Letter version

If p and not q , then r . Not r . p . Therefore, q .



From Concrete Propositions to Letters - Example 1.2

If *it is raining* and
Jane does not have her umbrella with her then
she will get wet.

Jane is not wet.

It is raining.

Therefore, *Jane has her umbrella with her*.

has

the same letter version

If p and not q , then r . Not r . p . Therefore, q .





Notations/Symbols

Sentences like “**If** p **and not** q , **then** r .” occur frequently. Instead of English words such as “**if...then**”, “**and**”, “**not**”, it is more convenient to use symbols such as \rightarrow , \wedge , \neg .

- \neg : negation of p is denoted by $\neg p$.
- \vee : disjunction of p and r is denoted by $p \vee r$, meaning at least one of the two statements is true.
- \wedge : conjunction of p and r is denoted by $p \wedge r$, meaning both are true.
- \rightarrow : implication between p and r is denoted by $p \rightarrow r$, meaning that r is a logical consequence of p . p is called the *antecedent*, and r the *consequent*.

Example 1.1 Revisited

From Example 1.1

If *the train arrives late* and
there are no taxis at the station then
John is late for his meeting.

Symbolic Propositions

We replaced “*the train arrives late*” by p , etc.

The statement becomes: If p and not q , then r .

Symbolic Connectives

With symbolic connectives, the statement becomes:

$$p \wedge \neg q \rightarrow r$$





[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

[Sequents](#)

[Rules for natural deduction](#)

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

[Meaning of Logical
Connectives](#)

[Preview: Soundness and
Completeness](#)

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Excursion: Intuitionistic Logic

③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form



Objective

We would like to develop a *calculus* for reasoning about propositions, so that we can establish the validity of statements such as Example 1.1.

Idea

We introduce *proof rules* that allow us to derive a formula ψ from a number of other formulas $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$.

Notation

We write a *sequent* $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$ to denote that we can derive ψ from $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$.

Example 1.1 Revisited

English

*If the train arrives late and
there are no taxis at the station then
John is late for his meeting.*

John is not late for his meeting.

The train did arrive late.

Therefore, there were taxis at the station.

Sequent

$$p \wedge \neg q \rightarrow r, \neg r, p \vdash q$$

Remaining task

Develop a set of proof rules that allows us to establish such sequents.



Rules for Conjunction

Introduction of Conjunction

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

Elimination of Conjunction

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\phi} [\wedge e_1] \qquad \frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\psi} [\wedge e_2]$$



Example of Proof

To show

$$p \wedge q, r \vdash q \wedge r.$$

How to start?

$$p \wedge q \quad r,$$

$$q \wedge r.$$

Proof Step-by-Step

- ① $p \wedge q$ (premise)
- ② r (premise)
- ③ q (by using Rule $\wedge e_2$ and Item 1)
- ④ $q \wedge r$ (by using Rule $\wedge i$ and Items 3 and 2)



Graphical Representation of Proof

$$\frac{\frac{p \wedge q}{q} [\wedge e_2] \quad r}{q \wedge r} [\wedge i]$$



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Where are we heading with this?

- We would like to prove sequents of the form $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$
- We introduce rules that allow us to form “legal” proofs
- Then any proof of any formula ψ using the premises $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ is considered “correct”.
- Can we say that sequents with a correct proof are somehow “valid”, or “meaningful”?
- What does it mean to be meaningful?
- Can we say that any meaningful sequent has a valid proof?
- ...but first back to the proof rules...



Rules of Double Negation and Eliminating Implication

Double Negation

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\phi} [\neg\neg e] \qquad \frac{\phi}{\neg\neg\phi} [\neg\neg i]$$

Eliminating Implication

$$\frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$

Example

p := “It rained,” and $p \rightarrow q$:= “If it rained, then the street is wet.”
We can conclude from these two that the street is indeed wet.



The rule

$$\frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$

is often called “Modus Ponens” (or MP)

Origin of term

“Modus ponens” is an abbreviation of the Latin “modus ponendo ponens” which means in English “mode that affirms by affirming”. More precisely, we could say “mode that affirms the antecedent of an implication”.



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Modus Tollens

A similar rule of “Modus Ponens”,

$$\frac{\phi \rightarrow \psi \quad \neg \psi}{\neg \phi} [MT]$$

is called “Modus Tollens” (or MT).

Origin of term

“Modus tollens” is an abbreviation of the Latin “modus tollendo tollens” which means in English “mode that denies by denying”. More precisely, we could say “mode that denies the consequent of an implication”.



Example

$$p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r), p, \neg r \vdash \neg q$$

1	$p \rightarrow (q \rightarrow r)$	premise
2	p	premise
3	$\neg r$	premise
4	$q \rightarrow r$	\rightarrow_e 1,2
5	$\neg q$	MT 4,3



How to introduce implication?

Compare the sequent (MT)

$$p \rightarrow q, \neg q \vdash \neg p$$

with the sequent

$$p \rightarrow q \vdash \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$$

The second sequent should be provable, but we don't have a rule to introduce implication yet!



A Proof We Would Like To Have

$$p \rightarrow q \vdash \neg q \rightarrow \neg p$$

1	$p \rightarrow q$	premise
2	$\neg q$	assumption
3	$\neg p$	MT 1,2
4	$\neg q \rightarrow \neg p$	\rightarrow_i 2-3

We can start a box with an *assumption*, and use previously proven propositions (including premises) from the outside in the box. We cannot use assumptions from inside the box in rules outside the box.



Rule for Introduction of Implication



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Introduction of Implication

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \psi \end{array}}{\phi \rightarrow \psi} [\rightarrow i]$$

Rule for Disjunction

Introduction of Disjunction

$$\frac{\phi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_1] \qquad \frac{\psi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_2]$$

Elimination of Disjunction

$$\frac{\phi \vee \psi \quad \begin{array}{|c|} \hline \phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{|c|} \hline \psi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \\ \hline \end{array}}{\chi} [\vee e]$$



Example

1	$p \wedge (q \vee r)$	premise
2	p	$\wedge e_1$ 1
3	$q \vee r$	$\wedge e_2$ 1
4	q	assumption
5	$p \wedge q$	$\wedge i$ 2,4
6	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee i_1$ 5
7	r	assumption
8	$p \wedge r$	$\wedge i$ 2,7
9	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee i_2$ 8
10	$(p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r)$	$\vee e$ 3, 4–6, 7–9



Special Propositions

- Recall: We are only interested in the truth value of propositions, not the subject matter that they refer to.
- Therefore, all propositions that we all agree must be true are the same!
- Example: $p \rightarrow p$, $p \vee \neg p$
- We denote the proposition that is always true (**tautology**) using the symbol \top .

Another Special Proposition

- Similarly, we denote the proposition that is always false (**contradiction**) using the symbol \perp .
- Example: $p \wedge \neg p$



Rule for Negation

Elimination of Negation

$$\frac{\phi \quad \neg\phi}{\perp} [\neg e]$$

Introduction of Negation

$$\frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \perp \end{array}}}{\neg\phi} [\neg i]$$



Elimination of \perp

Elimination of \perp

$$\frac{\perp}{\phi} [\perp e]$$



Basic Rules (conjunction and disjunction)

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\phi} [\wedge e_1]$$

$$\frac{\phi \wedge \psi}{\psi} [\wedge e_2]$$

$$\frac{\phi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_1] \quad \frac{\psi}{\phi \vee \psi} [\vee i_2] \quad \frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}} \quad \boxed{\begin{array}{c} \psi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}}}{\chi} [\vee e]$$



Basic Rules (implication)

$$\frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \psi \end{array}}}{\phi \rightarrow \psi} [\rightarrow i]$$

$$\frac{\phi \quad \phi \rightarrow \psi}{\psi} [\rightarrow e]$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Basic Rules (negation)

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \phi \\ \vdots \\ \perp \end{array}}{\neg\phi} [\neg i] \qquad \frac{\phi \quad \neg\phi}{\perp} [\neg e]$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Basic Rules (\perp and double negation)

$$\frac{\perp}{\phi} [\perp e]$$

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\phi} [\neg\neg e]$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

[Basic and Derived Rules](#)

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Some Derived Rules: Introduction of Double Negation

$$\frac{\phi}{\neg\neg\phi} [\neg\neg i]$$



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example: Deriving $[\neg\neg i]$ from $[\neg i]$ and $[\neg e]$

1	ϕ	premise
2	$\neg\phi$	assumption
3	\perp	$\neg e$ 1,2
4	$\neg\neg\phi$	$\neg i$ 2–3



Some Derived Rules: Modus Tollens

$$\frac{\phi \rightarrow \psi \quad \neg \psi}{\neg \phi} [MT]$$



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Some Derived Rules: Proof By Contradiction

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \neg\phi \\ \vdots \\ \perp \end{array}}{\phi} \text{ [PBC]}$$



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Some Derived Rules: Law of Excluded Middle

$$\frac{}{\phi \vee \neg \phi} [\text{LEM}]$$



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Motivation

Consider the following theorem.

Theorem

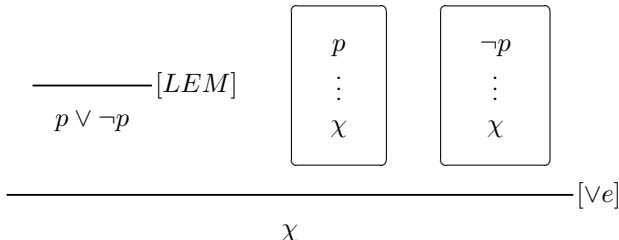
There exist irrational numbers a and b such that a^b is rational.

Let us call this theorem χ . We give a Proof Outline for χ .
Let p be the following proposition.

Proposition p

$\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ is rational.

Then the proof of χ goes like this:



In detail (1)

$$\begin{array}{c} p \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}$$

Assume $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ is rational. Choose a and b to be $\sqrt{2}$, and we have found irrational a and b such that a^b is rational. Thus Theorem χ holds under the assumption p .



In detail (2)

$$\begin{array}{c} \neg p \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}$$

Assume $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ is irrational. Choose a to be $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ and b to be $\sqrt{2}$. Then we have

$$a^b = (\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}})^{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}^{(\sqrt{2} \cdot \sqrt{2})} = (\sqrt{2})^2 = 2.$$

As 2 is rational, Theorem χ holds under the assumption $\neg p$.



Summary of Proof for χ

Proposition p

$\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ is rational.

$$\frac{\text{---} [LEM] \quad \begin{array}{|c|} \hline p \\ \vdots \\ \chi \\ \hline \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{|c|} \hline \neg p \\ \vdots \\ \chi \\ \hline \end{array}}{\text{---} [Ve] \quad \chi}$$

There exist irrational numbers a and b such that a^b is rational...



The Magic of LEM

- There exist irrational numbers a and b such that a^b is rational.
- But: If they exist, do you have an example?
- Probably $a = \sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ and $b = \sqrt{2}...$, but we haven't proven that $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ is irrational!
- Note: $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}}} = 2$
- Using LEM, we can make use of the “probable irrationality” of $\sqrt{2}^{\sqrt{2}}$ without having to prove it!



Intuitionistic logic does not accept the derived rule LEM.
The underlying argument for LEM is elimination of double negation.

$$\frac{\neg\neg\phi}{\phi} [\neg\neg e]$$



Deriving LEM using Basic Rules



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

[Intuitionistic Logic](#)

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

1	$\neg(\phi \vee \neg\phi)$	assumption
2	ϕ	assumption
3	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\vee i_1$ 2
4	\perp	$\neg e$ 3,1
5	$\neg\phi$	$\neg i$ 2-4
6	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\vee i_2$ 5
7	\perp	$\neg e$ 6,1
8	$\neg\neg(\phi \vee \neg\phi)$	$\neg i$ 1-7
9	$\phi \vee \neg\phi$	$\neg\neg e$

Intuitionistic Logic

Intuitionistic logic is obtained from natural deduction by removing the rule $\neg \neg e$.

History of Intuitionistic Logic

- Late 19th century: Gottlob Frege proposes to reduce mathematics to set theory.
- Russell destroys this programme via paradox.
- In response, L.E.J. Brouwer proposes *intuitionistic* mathematics, with *intuitionistic logic* as its formal foundation.
- An alternative response is Hilbert's *formalistic* position.

Applications of Intuitionistic Logic

- Intuitionistic logic has a strong connection to *computability*
- For example, if we have an intuitionistic proof of

Theorem

There exist irrational numbers a and b such that a^b is rational.

then we would know irrational a and b such that a^b is rational.





Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form

Recap: Logical Connectives

- \neg : negation of p is denoted by $\neg p$.
- \vee : disjunction of p and r is denoted by $p \vee r$, meaning at least one of the two statements is true.
- \wedge : conjunction of p and r is denoted by $p \wedge r$, meaning both are true.
- \rightarrow : implication between p and r is denoted by $p \rightarrow r$, meaning that r is a logical consequence of p .



Formal itemize Required



Use of Meta-Language

When we describe rules such as _____ $[LEM]$

$$\phi \vee \neg \phi$$

we mean that letters such as ϕ can be replaced by *any* formula.

But what exactly is the set of formulas that can be used for ϕ ?

Allowed

$$(p \wedge (\neg q))$$

Not allowed

$$) \wedge p \quad q \neg ($$

Definition of Well-formed Formulas



Definition

- Every propositional atom p, q, r, \dots and p_1, p_2, p_3, \dots is a well-formed formula.
- If ϕ is a well-formed formula, then so is $(\neg\phi)$.
- If ϕ and ψ are well-formed formulas, then so is $(\phi \wedge \psi)$.
- If ϕ and ψ are well-formed formulas, then so is $(\phi \vee \psi)$.
- If ϕ and ψ are well-formed formulas, then so is $(\phi \rightarrow \psi)$.

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Definition very restrictive

How about this formula?

$$p \wedge \neg q \vee r$$

Usually, this is understood to mean

$$((p \wedge (\neg q)) \vee r)$$

...but for the formal treatment of this section and the first homework, we insist on the strict definition, and exclude such formulas.



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Backus Naur Form: A more compact definition



Backus Naur Form for propositional formulas

$$\phi ::= p | (\neg \phi) | (\phi \wedge \phi) | (\phi \vee \phi) | (\phi \rightarrow \phi)$$

where p stands for any atomic proposition.

Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



How can we show that a formula such as

$$(((\neg p) \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \wedge (q \vee (\neg r))))$$

is well-formed?

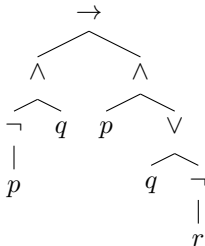
Answer: We look for the only applicable rule in the definition (the last rule in this case), and proceed on the parts.

Parse trees

A formula

$$(((\neg p) \wedge q) \rightarrow (p \wedge (q \vee (\neg r))))$$

...and its parse tree:



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

④ **Semantics of Propositional Logic**

Meaning of Logical Connectives

Preview: Soundness and Completeness

⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form

Meaning of propositional formula

Meaning as mathematical object

We define the meaning of formulas as a function that maps formulas and valuations to truth values.

Approach

We define this mapping based on the structure of the formula, using the meaning of their logical connectives.

Truth Values

The set of truth values contains two elements T and F, where T represents “**true**” and F represents “**false**”.

Valuations

A *valuation* or *model* of a formula ϕ is an assignment of each propositional atom in ϕ to a truth value.



Meaning of logical connectives

The meaning of a connective is defined as a truth table that gives the truth value of a formula, whose root symbol is the connective, based on the truth values of its components.

ϕ	ψ	$\phi \wedge \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F



Truth tables of formulas

Truth tables use placeholders of formulas such as ϕ :

ϕ	ψ	$\phi \wedge \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	F
F	F	F

Build the truth table for given formula:

p	q	r	$(p \wedge q)$	$((p \wedge q) \wedge r)$
T	T	T	T	T
T	T	F	T	F
\vdots				



Truth tables of other connectives

ϕ	ψ	$\phi \vee \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	T
F	T	T
F	F	F

ϕ	ψ	$\phi \rightarrow \psi$
T	T	T
T	F	F
F	T	T
F	F	T

ϕ	$\neg\phi$
T	F
F	T

\top
T

\perp
F



[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Constructing the truth table of a formula



p	q	$(\neg p)$	$\neg q$	$p \rightarrow \neg q$	$q \vee \neg p$	$(p \rightarrow \neg q) \rightarrow (q \vee \neg p)$
T	T	F	F	F	T	T
T	F	F	T	T	F	F
F	T	T	F	T	T	T
F	F	T	T	T	T	T

[Contents](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Declarative Sentences](#)

[Natural Deduction](#)

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

[Formal Language](#)

[Semantics](#)

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

[Normal Form](#)

[Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?](#)

Validity and Satisfiability

Validity

A formula is *valid* if it computes T for all its valuations.

Satisfiability

A formula is *satisfiable* if it computes T for at least one of its valuations.



Semantic Entailment, Soundness and Completeness of Propositional Logic



Semantic Entailment

If, for all valuations in which all $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ evaluate to T, the formula ψ evaluates to T as well, we say that $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ **semantically entail** ψ , written:

$$\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

Soundness

Let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ and ψ be propositional formulas. If $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$ valid (has a proof), then $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$.

Completeness

Let $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$ and ψ be propositional formulas. If $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$, then $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$ valid (has a proof).



Contents

Introduction

Declarative Sentences

Natural Deduction

Sequents

Rules for natural deduction

Basic and Derived Rules

Intuitionistic Logic

Formal Language

Semantics

Meaning of Logical
Connectives

Preview: Soundness and
Completeness

Normal Form

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Propositional Calculus: Declarative Sentences

② Propositional Calculus: Natural Deduction

③ Propositional Logic as a Formal Language

④ Semantics of Propositional Logic

⑤ Conjunctive Normal Form

Conjunctive Normal Form

Definition

A literal L is either an atom p or the negation of an atom $\neg p$. A formula C is in *conjunctive normal form* (CNF) if it is a conjunction of clauses, where each clause is a disjunction of literals:

$$\begin{aligned}L &::= p \mid \neg p, \\ D &::= L \mid L \vee D, \\ C &::= D \mid D \wedge C.\end{aligned}$$

Examples

- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge (\neg q \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$ is in CNF.
- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge ((p \wedge \neg q) \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$ is not in CNF.
- $(\neg p \vee q \vee r) \wedge \neg(\neg q \vee r) \wedge (\neg r)$ is not in CNF.



Lemma

A disjunction of literals $L_1 \vee L_2 \vee \dots \vee L_m$ is valid iff there are $1 \leq i, j \leq m$ such that L_i is $\neg L_j$.

How to disprove

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee r) \wedge (\neg p \vee r) \wedge q?$$

Disprove any of:

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee r) \quad \models (\neg p \vee r) \quad \models q.$$

How to prove

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r \neg p) \wedge (r \vee \neg r)?$$

Prove all of:

$$\models (\neg q \vee p \vee q) \quad \models (p \vee r \neg p) \quad \models (r \vee \neg r).$$



Usefulness of CNF (cont.) and Transformation to CNF

Proposition

Let ϕ be a formula of propositional logic. Then ϕ is satisfiable iff $\neg\phi$ is not valid.

Satisfiability test

We can test satisfiability of ϕ by transforming $\neg\phi$ into CNF, and show that some clause is not valid.

Theorem-Transformation to CNF

Every formula in the propositional calculus can be transformed into an equivalent formula in CNF.



Algorithm for CNF Transformation

- 1 Eliminate implication using:

$$A \rightarrow B \equiv \neg A \vee B.$$

- 2 Push all negations inward using De Morgan's laws:

$$\neg(A \wedge B) \equiv (\neg A \vee \neg B),$$

$$\neg(A \vee B) \equiv (\neg A \wedge \neg B).$$

- 3 Eliminate double negations using the equivalence $\neg\neg A \equiv A$.
- 4 The formula now consists of disjunctions and conjunctions of literals. Use the distributive laws to eliminate conjunctions within disjunctions:

$$A \vee (B \wedge C) \equiv (A \vee B) \wedge (A \vee C),$$

$$(A \wedge B) \vee C \equiv (A \vee C) \wedge (B \vee C).$$



Example

$$\begin{aligned}(\neg p \rightarrow \neg q) \rightarrow (p \rightarrow q) &\equiv \neg(\neg\neg p \vee \neg q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg\neg\neg p \wedge q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg p \wedge q) \vee (\neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv (\neg p \vee \neg p \vee q) \wedge (q \vee \neg p \vee q) \\&\equiv \top.\end{aligned}$$



Homeworks

- I. Write down the explanations (in Vietnamese, or in English if possible) of the following terms, find examples for each term, what are the differences between them:
 - 1) fallacy, contradiction, paradox, counterexample;
 - 2) premise, assumption, axiom, hypothesis, conjecture;
 - 3) tautology, valid, contradiction, satisfiable;
 - 4) soundness, completeness;
 - 5) sequent, consequence, implication, (semantic) entailment;
 - 6) argument, variable, arity;
- II. What are the differences between the following notations: ' \rightarrow ', ' \implies ', ' \vdash ', ' \models '? And what are the differences between the following notations: ' \longleftrightarrow ', ' \iff ', ' \dashv ', ' \equiv ', ' $=$ '? Find examples to illustrate these differences.
- III. It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:
 - 1.1: 2d), 2g);
 - 1.2: 1d), 1g), 1m), 1q), 1u), 1w), 3a), 3b), 3c), 3f), 3g), 3l), 3o);
 - 1.4: 12d);
 - 1.5: 3b), 3c), 7c).



Next Week?

- Exercises Session;
- [2, Section 1.6]: SAT Solvers;
- Application of SAT Solving.





Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Chapter 1b

Propositional Logic Review II

(SAT Solving and Application)

Mathematics Modeling

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 1** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006”

and some other sources)

**Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai**

*Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM*



① Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

Intermezzo: Classification of problems according to their difficulty

② 2-SAT is in P

An example

An Efficient Algorithm based on Unit Clause Propagation

Graphical View of 2-SAT

③ SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver



Contents

Introduction

Quick review
Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example
UNSAT
Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea
DPLL: Idea
A Linear Solver
A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

1 Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

Intermezzo: Classification of problems according to their difficulty

2 2-SAT is in P

3 SAT Solvers

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal;



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal; and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal;



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal;and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal;and
- If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned;



Contents

Introduction

Quick review
Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example
UNSAT
Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea
DPLL: Idea
A Linear Solver
A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal;and
- If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal;and
- If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned;and
- The unicorn is magical if it is horned.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review
Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example
UNSAT
Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea
DPLL: Idea
A Linear Solver
A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Motivated Example – A Logic Puzzle

- If the unicorn is mythical, then it is immortal;and
 - If the unicorn is not mythical, then it is a mortal mammal;and
 - If the unicorn is either immortal or a mammal, then it is horned;and
 - The unicorn is magical if it is horned.
-
- **Q:** Is the unicorn mythical? Is it magical? Is it horned?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example
UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea
DPLL: Idea
A Linear Solver
A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example
UNSAT
Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea
DPLL: Idea
A Linear Solver
A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.



- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.
- A formula ϕ in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.



- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.
- A formula ϕ in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = (\neg p_1 \vee p_2) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.



- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.
- A formula ϕ in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = (\neg p_1 \vee p_2) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.

Proposition (see [2, Subsection 1.5.1])

There is an algorithm to translate *any* Boolean formula into CNF.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Boolean formula ϕ is defined over a set of propositional variables p_1, \dots, p_n , using the standard propositional connectives $\neg, \wedge, \vee, \longrightarrow, \longleftrightarrow$, and parenthesis
 - The domain of propositional variables is $\{0, 1\}$.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = ((\neg p_1 \wedge p_2) \vee p_3) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.
- A formula ϕ in conjunctive normal form (CNF) is a conjunction of disjunctions (**clauses**) of **literals**, where a literal is a variable or its complement.
 - Example: $\phi(p_1, p_2, p_3) = (\neg p_1 \vee p_2) \wedge (\neg p_2 \vee p_3)$.

Proposition (see [2, Subsection 1.5.1])

There is an algorithm to translate *any* Boolean formula into CNF.

Proposition 1.45, p. 57

ϕ -satisfiable iff $\neg\phi$ -not tautology.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Problem



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.
- More-than-35-year old conjecture:

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Problem

Find an assignment to the variables p_1, \dots, p_n such that $\phi(p_1, \dots, p_n) = 1$, or prove that no such assignment exists.

Facts: SAT is an NP-complete decision problem [Cook'71]

- SAT was the first problem to be shown NP-complete.
- There are no known polynomial time algorithms for SAT.
- More-than-35-year old conjecture:
“Any algorithm that solves SAT is exponential in the number of variables, in the worst-case.”

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if** $P = NP$ **or not**.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if $P = NP$ or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**
 $X \leq_P Y :$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if $P = NP$ or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**
 $X \leq_P Y$:

A problem X is polynomial time reducible to a problem Y ($X \leq_P Y$) if we can solve X in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for Y (and the instance of problem Y we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem X).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if $P = NP$ or not.**
- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**
 $X \leq_P Y$:
A problem X is polynomial time reducible to a problem Y ($X \leq_P Y$) if we can solve X in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for Y (and the instance of problem Y we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem X).
- The class of **NP-complete** problems NPC : A problem Y is in NPC if



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if $P = NP$ or not.**

- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**

$X \leq_P Y$:

A problem X is polynomial time reducible to a problem Y ($X \leq_P Y$) if we can solve X in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for Y (and the instance of problem Y we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem X).

- The class of **NP-complete** problems NPC : A problem Y is in NPC if
 - a) $Y \in NP$, and



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Polynomial time reductions and NP-Completeness

- Denote
 - $EXP = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in exponential time}\}$
 - $P = \{\text{Decision problems solvable in polynomial time}\}$
 - $NP = \{\text{Decision problems where Yes solution can verified in polynomial time}\}$
- A major open question in theoretical computer science is **if $P = NP$ or not.**

- Introduce the notion of **polynomial time reductions**
 $X \leq_P Y$:

A problem X is polynomial time reducible to a problem Y ($X \leq_P Y$) if we can solve X in a polynomial number of calls to an algorithm for Y (and the instance of problem Y we solve can be computed in polynomial time from the instance of problem X).

- The class of **NP-complete** problems NPC : A problem Y is in NPC if
 - a) $Y \in NP$, and
 - b) $X \leq_P Y$ for all $X \in NP$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.
- If one problem $Y \in NPC$ is in P then $P = NP$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.
- If one problem $Y \in NPC$ is in P then $P = NP$.
- If one problem $Y \in NP$ is not in P then $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.
- If one problem $Y \in NPC$ is in P then $P = NP$.
- If one problem $Y \in NP$ is not in P then $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$.
- By now a lot of problems have been proved NP -complete



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

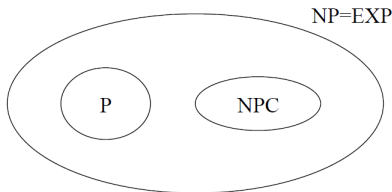
A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.
- If one problem $Y \in NPC$ is in P then $P = NP$.
- If one problem $Y \in NP$ is not in P then $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$.
- By now a lot of problems have been proved NP -complete
- We think the world looks like this—but we really do not know:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

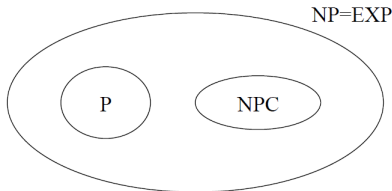
A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

P=NP question

- The problems in NPC are the hardest problems in NP and the key to resolving the $P = NP$ question.
- If one problem $Y \in NPC$ is in P then $P = NP$.
- If one problem $Y \in NP$ is not in P then $NPC \cap P = \emptyset$.
- By now a lot of problems have been proved NP -complete
- We think the world looks like this—but we really do not know:



- If someone found a polynomial time solution to a problem in NPC our world would “collapse” and a lot of smart people have tried really hard to solve NPC problems efficiently



We regard $Y \in NPC$ a strong evidence for Y being hard!



NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem *NP*-complete using another *NP*-complete problem.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in *P*

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
 - Example: $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
 - Example: $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in NPC , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
 - Example: $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in NPC , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
 - Example: $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in NPC , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.
 - 3SAT $\in NP$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

NP-Complete Problems

- The following lemma helps us to prove a problem NP -complete using another NP -complete problem.

Lemma: If $Y \in NP$ and $X \leq_P Y$ for some $X \in NPC$ then $Y \in NPC$

Proof: To prove $Y \in NPC$ we just need to prove $Y \in NP$ (often easy) and reduce problem in NPC to Y (no lower bound proof needed!).

- Finding the first problem in NPC is somewhat difficult and require quite a lot of formalism
- It seems to be a easier problem 3Sat: Given a formula in 3-CNF, is it satisfiable?
 - A formula is in 3-CNF (conjunctive normal form) if it consists of an And of 'clauses' each of which is the Or of 3 'literals'
 - Example: $(x_1 \vee \neg x_2 \vee \neg x_3) \wedge (\neg x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3) \wedge (x_1 \vee x_2 \vee x_3)$
- We prove that 3SAT is in NPC , meaning that it is as hard as general SAT.
 - $3SAT \in NP$
 - $SAT \leq_P 3SAT$ (we can show that transforming general formula into 3-CNF is in polynomial time.)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try $x_1 = 1$:

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try $x_1 = 1$:

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set $x_2 = 1$:

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try $x_1 = 1$:

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set $x_2 = 1$:

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set $x_3 = 1$:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Example

- Consider the following 2-CNF formula consisting of the following clauses:

$$\bar{x}_1 \vee x_2, \quad x_1 \vee x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad x_1 \vee \bar{x}_2.$$

- Let's try to set $x_1 = 0$. Then the formula simplifies to:

$$T, \quad x_2, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \bar{x}_2.$$

where T denotes the value "Truth".

- We are now *forced* to assign $x_2 = 1$ (as there is a unit-clause), and the formula simplifies to

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad \emptyset,$$

where \emptyset is the empty clause which denotes contradiction.

- So we have to backtrack to the last *free step*.
- Let's try $x_1 = 1$:

$$x_2, \quad T, \quad \bar{x}_2 \vee x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set $x_2 = 1$:

$$T, \quad T, \quad x_3, \quad x_3 \vee \bar{x}_4, \quad T.$$

- We are now forced to set $x_3 = 1$:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

(0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)
 - Unassign variables from step (a).



Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)
 - Unassign variables from step (a).
 - Set $\sigma_i = 0$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)
 - Unassign variables from step (a).
 - Set $\sigma_i = 0$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)
 - Unassign variables from step (a).
 - Set $\sigma_i = 0$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Algorithm(ϕ)

Abstracting the above example, we present an algorithm that attempts to satisfy a 2-CNF formula ϕ as follows.

Algorithm(ϕ)

- (0) Initialize empty assignment $\sigma = *^n$.
- (1) If all variables are assigned return σ .
- (2) Choose an unassigned variable x_i .
 - (a) (Try $x_i = 1$)
 - Set $\sigma_i = 1$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, x_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
 - (b) (Try $x_i = 0$)
 - Unassign variables from step (a).
 - Set $\sigma_i = 0$, $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \bar{x}_i)$.
 - $\phi' \leftarrow \text{Unit Clause Propagation}(\phi')$.
 - If ϕ' does not contain \emptyset goto (1).
- (3) Halt with "UNSAT".



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)

- While \exists unit clause ℓ_i :



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)

- While \exists unit clause ℓ_i :
 - Update σ : if $\ell_i = x_i$ set $\sigma_i = 1$, else ($\ell_i = \bar{x}_i$) set $\sigma_i = 0$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)

- While \exists unit clause ℓ_i :
 - Update σ : if $\ell_i = x_i$ set $\sigma_i = 1$, else ($\ell_i = \bar{x}_i$) set $\sigma_i = 0$.
 - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)

- While \exists unit clause ℓ_i :
 - Update σ : if $\ell_i = x_i$ set $\sigma_i = 1$, else ($\ell_i = \bar{x}_i$) set $\sigma_i = 0$.
 - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

Simplify(ϕ, ℓ_i)

- \forall clause $C \in \phi$:
 - If $\ell_i \in C$, remove C .
 - If $\bar{\ell}_i \in C$, $C \leftarrow C \setminus \bar{\ell}_i$.
 - Otherwise, copy C as is.
- Output the modified formula.

Unit Clause Propagation(ϕ)

- While \exists unit clause ℓ_i :
 - Update σ : if $\ell_i = x_i$ set $\sigma_i = 1$, else ($\ell_i = \bar{x}_i$) set $\sigma_i = 0$.
 - $\phi \leftarrow \text{Simplify}(\phi, \ell_i)$.

Complexity: Let n denote the number of variables and let m denote the number of clauses. It is not hard to verify that there are at most n outer iterations and that each call to UCP takes at most $O(m)$ time, therefore the running time of Algorithm is $O(m \cdot n)$. (HW: Find an implementation in $O(n + m)$ complexity.)



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$ violate a clause $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$ if: σ_i and σ_j are assigned (i.e., $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$) and σ_i doesn't satisfy ℓ_i and σ_j doesn't satisfy ℓ_j .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$ violate a clause $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$ if: σ_i and σ_j are assigned (i.e., $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$) and σ_i doesn't satisfy ℓ_i and σ_j doesn't satisfy ℓ_j . The lemma follows from the following invariance.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$ violate a clause $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$ if: σ_i and σ_j are assigned (i.e., $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$) and σ_i doesn't satisfy ℓ_i and σ_j doesn't satisfy ℓ_j . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

Lemma

At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment $\sigma^{(i)}$ does not violate any of the clauses of C .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$ violate a clause $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$ if: σ_i and σ_j are assigned (i.e., $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$) and σ_i doesn't satisfy ℓ_i and σ_j doesn't satisfy ℓ_j . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

Lemma

At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment $\sigma^{(i)}$ does not violate any of the clauses of C .

Chứng minh.

Invariance 2 By induction on i . The basis is trivial as in the first iteration $\sigma = *^n$ and so none of the clauses are violated.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs an assignment σ , then σ satisfies ϕ .

We will need the following definition: A partial assignment $\sigma \in \{0, 1, *\}^n$ violate a clause $C = \ell_i \vee \ell_j$ if: σ_i and σ_j are assigned (i.e., $\sigma_i, \sigma_j \neq *$) and σ_i doesn't satisfy ℓ_i and σ_j doesn't satisfy ℓ_j . The lemma follows from the following invariance.

Lemma

At the beginning of each iteration, the current partial assignment $\sigma^{(i)}$ does not violate any of the clauses of C .

Chứng minh.

Invariance 2 By induction on i . The basis is trivial as in the first iteration $\sigma = *^n$ and so none of the clauses are violated. Step: we'll prove that none of the clauses C are violated by $\sigma^{(i+1)}$. If both variables of C were assigned before the last iteration, then, by the induction hypothesis, $\sigma^{(i)}$ doesn't violate C , and therefore, so is $\sigma^{(i+1)}$. If both variables of C were assigned in the last iteration, then C must be satisfied by $\sigma^{(i+1)}$, otherwise, the algorithm finds a contradiction. □



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.
- Let $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$ and $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$. It suffices to show that both ϕ_0 and ϕ_1 are unsatisfiable.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DP LL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.
- Let $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$ and $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$. It suffices to show that both ϕ_0 and ϕ_1 are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_0)$ and the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_1)$ contain a contradiction.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.
- Let $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$ and $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$. It suffices to show that both ϕ_0 and ϕ_1 are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_0)$ and the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_1)$ contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if $\text{UCP}(\psi)$ contains a contradiction, then ψ is UNSAT.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.
- Let $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$ and $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$. It suffices to show that both ϕ_0 and ϕ_1 are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_0)$ and the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_1)$ contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if $\text{UCP}(\psi)$ contains a contradiction, then ψ is UNSAT.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Correctness of the Algorithm (cont.)

Lemma

If the algorithm outputs UNSAT, then ϕ is unsatisfiable.

Chứng minh.

- Let ϕ' be the formula at the beginning of the iteration in which A halts, and let x_i be the variable chosen at step (2) of this last iteration.
- Note that ϕ' is a 2-CNF formula and $\phi' \subseteq \phi$ (i.e., all the clauses of ϕ' appear as clauses in ϕ).
- Hence, it suffices to show that ϕ' is unsatisfiable.
- Let $\phi_0 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 0)$ and $\phi_1 = \text{Simplify}(\phi', x_i = 1)$. It suffices to show that both ϕ_0 and ϕ_1 are unsatisfiable.
- Recall that the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_0)$ and the formula $\text{UCP}(\phi_1)$ contain a contradiction.
- The proof now follows by noting that if $\text{UCP}(\psi)$ contains a contradiction, then ψ is UNSAT.



Therefore, we have an efficient algorithm for SAT of 2-CNF.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
 $\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$

Main property: Let σ be a satisfying assignment.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$

Main property: Let σ be a satisfying assignment.

If σ satisfies a node v , then σ satisfies all nodes u achievable from v .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$

Main property: Let σ be a satisfying assignment.

If σ satisfies a node v , then σ satisfies all nodes u achievable from v .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$

Main property: Let σ be a satisfying assignment.

If σ satisfies a node v , then σ satisfies all nodes u achievable from v .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Graphical View of 2-SAT

- For a 2-CNF formula ϕ , define the implication graph $G = G_\phi$ as follows:
 - nodes $x_1, \bar{x}_1, x_2, \bar{x}_2, \dots, x_n, \bar{x}_n$
 - for a clause $\ell_i \vee \ell_j$ define the edges:
$$\bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \ell_j$$
$$\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \ell_i$$

Main property: Let σ be a satisfying assignment.

If σ satisfies a node v , then σ satisfies all nodes u achievable from v .

The property can be proven by induction on the length of the path.

Theorem

ϕ is satisfiable iff the graph G does not contain a “contradiction path” of the form:

$$\ell_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \ell_i.$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① $(\exists \text{ contradiction path} \Rightarrow \phi \text{ is UNSAT})$:

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② $(\phi \text{ is UNSAT} \Rightarrow \exists \text{ contradiction path})$:

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① $(\exists \text{ contradiction path} \Rightarrow \phi \text{ is UNSAT})$:

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② $(\phi \text{ is UNSAT} \Rightarrow \exists \text{ contradiction path})$:

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

$$(a) \ell_j \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

- (a) $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b) $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

- (a) $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b) $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

- (a) $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b) $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$ is an edge, then $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$ is also an edge.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

- (a) $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$
- (b) $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$ is an edge, then $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$ is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

(a) $\ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$

(b) $\ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$

In our graph, if $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$ is an edge, then $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$ is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

(a) $\Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

$$(a) \ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$$

$$(b) \ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$$

In our graph, if $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$ is an edge, then $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$ is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

$$(a) \Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$$

$$(b) \Rightarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow x_i$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof for the previous theorem

① (\exists contradiction path $\Rightarrow \phi$ is UNSAT):

- Take a potential assignment σ .
- If σ satisfies ℓ_i , then by Property it must satisfy $\bar{\ell}_i$.
Contradiction.
- If σ satisfies $\bar{\ell}_i$, then by Property it must satisfy ℓ_i .
Contradiction.

② (ϕ is UNSAT $\Rightarrow \exists$ contradiction path):

If ϕ is UNSAT \Rightarrow Algorithm Halts.

\Rightarrow for some x_i we have:

$$(a) \ell_j \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j$$

$$(b) \ell_k \leftarrow \dots \leftarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k$$

In our graph, if $\ell_i \rightarrow \ell_j$ is an edge, then $\bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_i$ is also an edge.

By reversing edges and negating:

$$(a) \Rightarrow x_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_j \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{x}_i$$

$$(b) \Rightarrow \bar{x}_i \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow \bar{\ell}_k \rightarrow \dots \rightarrow x_i$$

Therefore, there exists a contradiction path.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Introduction

② 2-SAT is in P

③ SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
 - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
 - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
 - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
 - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
 - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:
 - picking a random variable, and



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

WalkSAT: An Incomplete Solver

- **Idea:** Start with a random truth assignment, and then iteratively improve the assignment until model is found.
- **Details:** In each step, choose an unsatisfied clause (clause selection), and “flip” one of its variables (variable selection).

WalkSAT: Details

- **Termination criterion:** No unsatisfied clauses are left.
- **Clause selection:** Choose a random unsatisfied clause.
- **Variable selection:**
 - If there are variables that when flipped make no currently satisfied clause unsatisfied, flip one which makes the most unsatisfied clauses satisfied.
 - Otherwise, make a choice with a certain probability between:
 - picking a random variable, and
 - picking a variable that when flipped minimizes the number of unsatisfied clauses.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

DPLL: Idea

- Simplify formula based on



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and

- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and unit propagation



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

- Simplify formula based on pure literal elimination and unit propagation
- If not done, pick an atom p and split: $\phi \wedge p$ or $\phi \wedge \neg p$

A Linear Solver: Idea

- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Linear Solver: Idea

- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Linear Solver: Idea

- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Linear Solver: Idea

- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.
- Propagate constraints using obvious rules.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Linear Solver: Idea

- Transform formula to tree of conjunctions and negations.
- Transform tree into graph.
- Mark the top of the tree as T.
- Propagate constraints using obvious rules.
- If all leaves are marked, check that corresponding assignment makes the formula true.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Transformation

$$T(p) = p$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Transformation

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2)\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg\phi) &= \neg\phi(T)\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg \phi) &= \neg \phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg \phi) &= \neg \phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Transformation

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg \phi) &= \neg \phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$

Example



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in \mathcal{P}

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg \phi) &= \neg \phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$

Example

$$\phi = p \wedge \neg(q \vee \neg p)$$



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

$$\begin{aligned}T(p) &= p \\T(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2) &= T(\phi_1) \wedge T(\phi_2) \\T(\neg \phi) &= \neg \phi(T) \\T(\phi_1 \rightarrow \phi_2) &= \neg(T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2)) \\T(\phi_1 \vee \phi_2) &= \neg(\neg T(\phi_1) \wedge \neg T(\phi_2))\end{aligned}$$

Example

$$\phi = p \wedge \neg(q \vee \neg p)$$

$$T(\phi) = p \wedge \neg \neg(\neg q \wedge \neg \neg p)$$

Binary Decision Tree: Example

See Example 1.48 and Figure 1.12 on page 70.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Problem



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

What happens to formulas of the kind $\neg(\phi_1 \wedge \phi_2)$?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node n that is still unmarked:



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPOLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node n that is still unmarked:
 - Mark n with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node n that is still unmarked:
 - Mark n with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
 - Mark n with F and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A Cubic Solver: Idea

Improve the linear solver as follows:

- Run linear solver
- For every node n that is still unmarked:
 - Mark n with T and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
 - Mark n with F and run linear solver, possibly resulting in temporary marks.
 - Combine temporary marks, resulting in possibly new permanent marks



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that ϕ is in CNF.

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that ϕ is in CNF.
- ϕ can be altered so that it contains exactly 3 literals per clause (can be fed to 3-SAT solver).

An application of SAT solving: Solve Sudoku Boolean Formula

Propositional Logic
Review II

Nguyen An Khuong,
Le Hong Trang,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen,
Tran Van Hoai



At the end of Chapter 0, we saw that

$$\phi = I \wedge R \wedge C \wedge B$$

- Note that ϕ is in CNF.
- ϕ can be altered so that it contains exactly 3 literals per clause (can be fed to 3-SAT solver).
- Problem: Solve this 3-SAT problem with a suitable solver?

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)

P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Homeworks

- Read carefully all proofs in this note.
- Try to solve the Sudoku in the Introduction note
- Show that $kSAT \in NPC$ for all $k \geq 3$.
- Do ALL marked questions of Exercises 1.6 in [2].
- Read carefully Subsections 1.6.1 and 1.6.2 in [2].

Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Introduction

Quick review

Boolean Satisfiability (SAT)
P and NP

2-SAT is in P

An example

UNSAT

Graphical View of 2-SAT

SAT Solvers

WalkSAT: Idea

DPLL: Idea

A Linear Solver

A Cubic Solver

Homeworks

- Read carefully all proofs in this note.
- Try to solve the Sudoku in the Introduction note
- Show that $kSAT \in NPC$ for all $k \geq 3$.
- Do ALL marked questions of Exercises 1.6 in [2].
- Read carefully Subsections 1.6.1 and 1.6.2 in [2].

Next Week?

Predicate Logic

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Chapter 1c

Advanced Predicate Logic

Discrete Mathematics II

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen
Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM



① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

② Semantics of Predicate Logic

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

② Semantics of Predicate Logic

③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus

More Declarative Sentences

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

More Declarative Sentences

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

More Declarative Sentences

- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.

- But*: How about statements with “*there exists...*” or “*every...*” or “*among...*”?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

What is needed?

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

What is needed?

Example

Every student is younger than some instructor.

What is this statement about?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

What is needed?

Example

Every student is younger than some instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

What is needed?

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

What is needed?

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.

We express them in predicate logic using *predicates*.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example

Every student is younger than some instructor.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Example

Every student is younger than some instructor.

- $S(An)$ could denote that An is a student.
- $I(Binh)$ could denote that Binh is an instructor.
- $Y(An, Binh)$ could denote that An is younger than Binh.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

We use the predicate S to denote student-hood.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language
Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

We use the predicate S to denote student-hood.
How do we express “*every student*”?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language
Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables



Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

We use the predicate S to denote student-hood.

How do we express “*every student*”?

We need *variables* that can stand for constant values, and a *quantifier* symbol that denotes “*every*”.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language
Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables

Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Need for Variables



Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

Using variables and quantifiers, we can write:

$$\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow (\exists y(I(y) \wedge Y(x, y)))).$$

Literally: For every x , if x is a student, then there is some y such that y is an instructor and x is younger than y .

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

English

Not all birds can fly.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

English

Not all birds can fly.

Predicates

$B(x)$: x is a bird

$F(x)$: x can fly



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

English

Not all birds can fly.

Predicates

$B(x)$: x is a bird

$F(x)$: x can fly

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\neg(\forall x(B(x) \rightarrow F(x)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Third Example

English

Every girl is younger than her mother.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Third Example

English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

Predicates

$G(x)$: x is a girl

$M(x, y)$: y is x 's mother

$Y(x, y)$: x is younger than y



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Third Example

English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

Predicates

$G(x)$: x is a girl

$M(x, y)$: y is x 's mother

$Y(x, y)$: x is younger than y

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A “Mother” Function

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that y is only introduced to denote the mother of x .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

- Predicate Logic as Formal Language
- Proof Theory of Predicate Logic
- Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

- Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

- Undecidability of Predicate Logic

- Compactness of Predicate Calculus

- Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

A “Mother” Function

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that y is only introduced to denote the mother of x .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate $M(x, y)$ is a function, when read from right to left.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A “Mother” Function

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that y is only introduced to denote the mother of x .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate $M(x, y)$ is a function, when read from right to left.

We introduce a function symbol m that can be applied to variables and constants as in

$$\forall x (G(x) \rightarrow Y(x, m(x)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Drastic Example

English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Drastic Example

English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(\text{An}, y) \wedge \\ M(v, u) \wedge M(\text{Binh}, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Drastic Example

English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(An, y) \wedge \\ M(v, u) \wedge M(Binh, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$

The same sentence in predicate logic with functions

$$m(m(An)) = m(m(Binh))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Syntax: We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Syntax: We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.

Proof theory: We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Syntax: We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.

Proof theory: We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic

Semantics: We describe models in which predicates, functions, and formulas have meaning.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language
Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic
Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Syntax: We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.

Proof theory: We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic

Semantics: We describe models in which predicates, functions, and formulas have meaning.

Further topics: Soundness/completeness (beyond scope of module), undecidability, incompleteness results, compactness results, extensions



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

② Semantics of Predicate Logic

③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols \mathcal{P}



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols \mathcal{P}
- a set of function symbols \mathcal{F}



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols \mathcal{P}
- a set of function symbols \mathcal{F}
- a set of constant symbols \mathcal{C}

Arity of Functions and Predicates

Every function symbol in \mathcal{F} and predicate symbol in \mathcal{P} comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Every function symbol in \mathcal{F} and predicate symbol in \mathcal{P} comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.

Special case

Function symbols with arity 0 are called *constants*.

$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- x ranges over a given set of variables **var**,



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- x ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- c ranges over nullary function symbols in \mathcal{F} , and



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- x ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- c ranges over nullary function symbols in \mathcal{F} , and
- f ranges over function symbols in \mathcal{F} with arity $n > 0$.

Examples of Terms

If n is nullary, f is unary, and g is binary, then examples of terms are:

- $g(f(n), n)$
- $f(g(n, f(n)))$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

More Examples of Terms

If $0, 1, \dots$ are nullary, s is unary, and $+$, $-$ and $*$ are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

More Examples of Terms

If $0, 1, \dots$ are nullary, s is unary, and $+$, $-$ and $*$ are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.

Occasionally, we allow ourselves to use infix notation for function symbols as in

$$(2 - (s(x) + y)) * x$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



$$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$ is a predicate symbol of arity $n \geq 1$,

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$ is a predicate symbol of arity $n \geq 1$,
- t_i are terms over \mathcal{F} and



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

$$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg\phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x\phi) \mid (\exists x\phi)$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$ is a predicate symbol of arity $n \geq 1$,
- t_i are terms over \mathcal{F} and
- x is a variable.

Just like for propositional logic, we introduce convenient conventions to reduce the number of parentheses:

- $\neg, \forall x$ and $\exists x$ bind most tightly;
- then \wedge and \vee ;
- then \rightarrow , which is right-associative.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

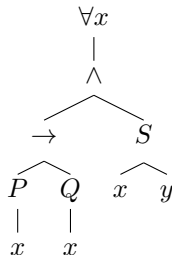
Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

has parse tree



Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

Predicates

$S(x, y)$: x is a son of y

$B(x, y)$: x is a brother of y



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

Predicates

$S(x, y)$: x is a son of y

$B(x, y)$: x is a brother of y

Functions

m : constant for “me”

$f(x)$: father of x



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

Predicates

$S(x, y)$: x is a son of y

$B(x, y)$: x is a brother of y

Functions

m : constant for “me”

$f(x)$: father of x

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

Predicates

$S(x, y)$: x is a son of y

$B(x, y)$: x is a brother of y

Functions

m : constant for “me”

$f(x)$: father of x

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$

Does this formula hold?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Equality as Predicate

Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Equality as Predicate

Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$

Example

Instead of the formula

$$= (f(x), g(x))$$

we usually write the formula

$$f(x) = g(x)$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder” x and occurrences of x ?

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

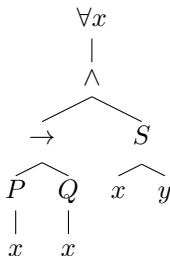
Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder” x and occurrences of x ?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

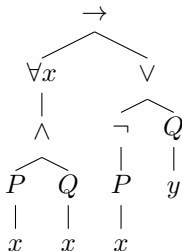
Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Substitution

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

Definition

Given a variable x , a term t and a formula ϕ , we define $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable x in ϕ with t .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

Definition

Given a variable x , a term t and a formula ϕ , we define $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable x in ϕ with t .

Example

$$\begin{aligned} [x \Rightarrow f(x, y)](\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) &\rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)) \\ &= \forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y)) \end{aligned}$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Note on Notation

Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

the textbook uses the notation

$$\phi[t/x]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

A Note on Notation

Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

the textbook uses the notation

$$\phi[t/x]$$

(we find the order of arguments in the latter notation hard to remember)



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example as Parse Tree

$$\begin{aligned} [x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))) \\ = (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y)) \end{aligned}$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

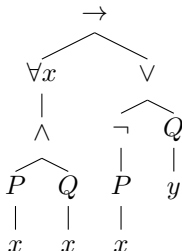
Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example as Parse Tree

$$\begin{aligned} & [x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))) \\ &= (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y)) \end{aligned}$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

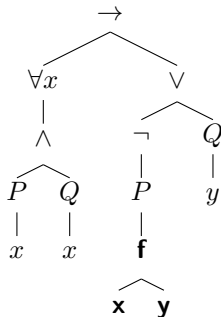
Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example as Parse Tree



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

Problem

t contains variable y and x occurs under the scope of $\forall y$ in ϕ



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

Problem

t contains variable y and x occurs under the scope of $\forall y$ in ϕ

Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

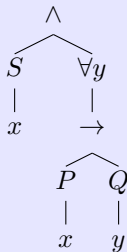
Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

Problem

t contains variable y and x occurs under the scope of $\forall y$ in ϕ

Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Definition

Given a term t , a variable x and a formula ϕ , we say that t is free for x in ϕ if no free x leaf in ϕ occurs in the scope of $\forall y$ or $\exists y$ for any variable y occurring in t .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Definition

Given a term t , a variable x and a formula ϕ , we say that t is free for x in ϕ if no free x leaf in ϕ occurs in the scope of $\forall y$ or $\exists y$ for any variable y occurring in t .

Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$, we demand that t is free for x in ϕ .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Definition

Given a term t , a variable x and a formula ϕ , we say that t is free for x in ϕ if no free x leaf in ϕ occurs in the scope of $\forall y$ or $\exists y$ for any variable y occurring in t .

Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$, we demand that t is free for x in ϕ .

What if not?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Avoiding Capturing

Definition

Given a term t , a variable x and a formula ϕ , we say that t is free for x in ϕ if no free x leaf in ϕ occurs in the scope of $\forall y$ or $\exists y$ for any variable y occurring in t .

Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$, we demand that t is free for x in ϕ .

What if not?

Rename the bound variable!



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

\Downarrow



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

\Downarrow

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

\Downarrow

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$

\Downarrow



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example of Renaming

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

\Downarrow

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$

\Downarrow

$$S(f(y, y)) \wedge \forall z(P(f(y, y)) \rightarrow Q(z))$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal Language

Proof Theory of Predicate Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

② Semantics of Predicate Logic

③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Natural Deduction for Predicate Logic

Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Natural Deduction for Predicate Logic

Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.

Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Natural Deduction for Predicate Logic



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.

Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.

Example

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

Built-in Rules for Equality

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Properties of Equality

We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Properties of Equality

We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$

1	$f(x) = g(x)$	premise
2	$h(f(x)) = h(f(x))$	$= i$
3	$h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$	$= e \ 1,2$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Rules for Universal Quantification

$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi} [\forall x e]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example

$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi} [\forall x e]$$

We prove: $F(m(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(m(Duong))$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example

$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi} [\forall x e]$$

We prove: $F(m(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(m(Duong))$

1	$F(m(Duong))$	premise
2	$\forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x))$	premise
3	$F(m(Duong)) \rightarrow \neg M(m(Duong))$	$\forall x e$ 2
4	$\neg M(m(Duong))$	$\rightarrow e$ 3,1



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Rules for Universal Quantification

If we manage to establish a formula ϕ about a fresh variable x_0 , we can assume $\forall x\phi$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Rules for Universal Quantification

If we manage to establish a formula ϕ about a fresh variable x_0 , we can assume $\forall x\phi$.

$$\frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} x_0 \\ \vdots \\ [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \end{array}}}{\forall x\phi} [\forall x \ i]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

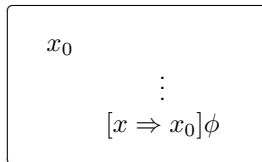
Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example

$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \forall xP(x) \vdash \forall xQ(x)$ via



$\forall x\phi$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

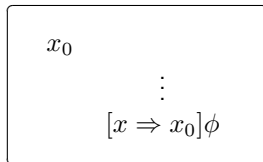
Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example



$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \forall xP(x) \vdash \forall xQ(x)$ via $\frac{\quad}{\forall x\phi}$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\forall xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \text{ e } 1$
4	$P(x_0)$	$\forall x \text{ e } 2$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow \text{e } 3,4$
6	$\forall xQ(x)$	$\forall x \text{ i } 3-5$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Rules for Existential Quantification

$$\frac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \phi} [\exists x \ i]$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Rules for Existential Quantification

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \dfrac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \phi} [\exists x i] \\
 \\
 \begin{array}{c}
 \exists x \phi \quad \boxed{\begin{array}{c} x_0 \quad [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}} \\
 \hline
 \chi \quad [\exists e]
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example

$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \exists xP(x) \vdash \exists xQ(x)$$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\exists xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0)$	assumption
4	$P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \text{ e } 1$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow \text{e } 4,3$
6	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \text{ i } 5$
7	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \text{ e } 2,3-6$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Examples of Quantifier Equivalences

$$\neg\forall x\phi \dashv\vdash \exists x\neg\phi$$

$$\neg\exists x\phi \dashv\vdash \forall x\neg\phi$$

$$\exists x\exists y\phi \dashv\vdash \exists y\exists x\phi$$

Assume x is not free in ψ :

$$\forall x\phi \wedge \psi \dashv\vdash \forall x(\phi \wedge \psi)$$

$$\exists x(\psi \rightarrow \phi) \dashv\vdash \psi \rightarrow \exists x\phi$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

① Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

② Semantics of Predicate Logic

③ Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

④ Undecidability of Predicate Logic

⑤ Compactness of Predicate Calculus



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Definition

Let \mathcal{F} contain function symbols and \mathcal{P} contain predicate symbols.
A model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ consists of:

- 1 A non-empty set A , the *universe*;
- 2 for each nullary function symbol $f \in \mathcal{F}$ a concrete element $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$;
- 3 for each $f \in \mathcal{F}$ with arity $n > 0$, a concrete function $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$;
- 4 for each $P \in \mathcal{P}$ with arity $n > 0$, a set $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$.

Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{e, \cdot\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example (continued)

- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Some Elements of A

- 10001
- ϵ
- 1010 $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ 1100



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example (continued)

- 1 Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- 2 let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- 3 let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- 4 let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Some Elements of A

- 10001
- ϵ
- $1010 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} 1100 = 10101100$
- ϵ
- $000 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} \epsilon$



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example (continued)

- 1 Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- 2 let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- 3 let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- 4 let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Some Elements of A

- 10001
- ϵ
- $1010 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} 1100 = 10101100$
- ϵ
- $000 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} \epsilon = 000$



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Equality Revisited



Interpretation of equality

Usually, we require that the equality predicate $=$ is interpreted as same-ness.

Extensionality restriction

This means that allowable models are restricted to those in which $a =^{\mathcal{M}} b$ holds if and only if a and b are the same elements of the model's universe.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example (continued)

- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Example (continued)

- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Equality in \mathcal{M}

- $000 =^{\mathcal{M}} 000$
- $001 \neq^{\mathcal{M}} 100$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of natural numbers;



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$;



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$;
- ③ let $s^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s(n) = n + 1$; and



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Another Example

Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$;
- ③ let $s^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s(n) = n + 1$; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $n_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} n_2$ iff the natural number n_1 is less than or equal to n_2 .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

How To Handle Free Variables?

Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

How To Handle Free Variables?

Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$

Environment extension

We define environment extension such that $l[x \mapsto a]$ is the environment that maps x to a and any other variable y to $l(y)$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The model \mathcal{M} satisfies ϕ with respect to environment l , written $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$:

- in case ϕ is of the form $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$, if the result (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) of evaluating t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n with respect to l is in $P^{\mathcal{M}}$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\forall x\psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for all $a \in A$;



The model \mathcal{M} satisfies ϕ with respect to environment l , written $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$:

- in case ϕ is of the form $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$, if the result (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) of evaluating t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n with respect to l is in $P^{\mathcal{M}}$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\forall x\psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for all $a \in A$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\exists x\psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for some $a \in A$;

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds or $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds;



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds or $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds and $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds; and



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds or $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds and $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds; and
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction of Closed Formulas

If a formula ϕ has no free variables, we call ϕ a *sentence*.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Satisfaction of Closed Formulas



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

If a formula ϕ has no free variables, we call ϕ a *sentence*.
 $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds or does not hold regardless of the choice of l . Thus
we write $\mathcal{M} \models \phi$ or $\mathcal{M} \not\models \phi$.

Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$ iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds for all $\phi \in \Gamma$, then $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$ iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds for all $\phi \in \Gamma$, then $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.

Satisfiability of Formulas

ψ is satisfiable iff there is some model \mathcal{M} and some environment l such that $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ holds.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Semantic Entailment and Satisfiability

Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$ iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds for all $\phi \in \Gamma$, then $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.

Satisfiability of Formulas

ψ is satisfiable iff there is some model \mathcal{M} and some environment l such that $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ holds.

Satisfiability of Formula Sets

Γ is satisfiable iff there is some model \mathcal{M} and some environment l such that $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$, for all $\phi \in \Gamma$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Validity

ψ is valid iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , we have $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.

The Problem with Predicate Logic

Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences: $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ requires that in *all* models that satisfy $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$, the sentence ψ is satisfied.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Problem with Predicate Logic

Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences: $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ requires that in *all* models that satisfy $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$, the sentence ψ is satisfied.

How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Problem with Predicate Logic

Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences: $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ requires that in *all* models that satisfy $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$, the sentence ψ is satisfied.

How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.

Idea from propositional logic

Can we use natural deduction for showing entailment?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Central Result of Natural Deduction

$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

iff

$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$$

proven by Kurt Gödel, in 1929 in his doctoral dissertation



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Recall: Decidability

Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Recall: Decidability

Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Recall: Decidability

Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.

Decidability of satisfiability

The question, whether a given propositional formula is satisfiable, is decidable.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Undecidability of Predicate Logic



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.



Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Post Correspondence Problem

Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Post Correspondence Problem



Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?

Formally

Given a finite sequence of pairs $(s_1, t_1), (s_2, t_2), \dots, (s_k, t_k)$ such that all s_i and t_i are binary strings of positive length, is there a sequence of indices i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n with $n \geq 1$ such that the concatenations $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_n}$ and $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_n}$ are equal?

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem



Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.

Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.

Proof idea

For a Turing machine with a given input, construct a PCP such that a solution of the PCP exists if and only if the Turing machine accepts the solution.

Translate Post Correspondence Problem to Formula

Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions f_0 and f_1 .



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Translate Post Correspondence Problem to Formula



Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions f_0 and f_1 .

Strings as Terms

Represent the empty string by a constant e .

The string $b_1b_2 \dots b_l$ corresponds to the term

$$f_{b_l}(f_{b_{l-1}} \dots (f_{b_2}(f_{b_1}(e))) \dots)$$

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Towards a Formula for a PCP

Let C be the problem

s_1	s_2	\dots	s_k
t_1	t_2	\dots	t_k



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Towards a Formula for a PCP



Let C be the problem

$$\begin{array}{cccc} s_1 & s_2 & \dots & s_k \\ t_1 & t_2 & \dots & t_k \end{array}$$

Idea

$P(s, t)$ holds iff there is a sequence of indices (i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m) such that s is $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_m}$ and t is $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_m}$.

Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

The Formula ϕ

$\phi = \phi_1 \wedge \phi_2 \rightarrow \phi_3$, where

$$\phi_1 = \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(e), f_{t_i}(e))$$

$$\phi_2 = \forall v \forall w (P(v, w) \rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(v), f_{t_i}(w)))$$

$$\phi_3 = \exists z P(z, z)$$



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Undecidability of Predicate Logic



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

So Far

Post correspondence problem is undecidable.

Constructed ϕ_C for Post correspondence problem C .

To Show

$\models \phi_C$ holds if and only if C has a solution.

Proof

Proof via construction of ϕ_C . Formally construct an interpretation of strings and show that whenever there is a solution, the formula ϕ_C holds and vice versa.

Summary of Undecidability Proof

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Summary of Undecidability Proof



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable

Summary of Undecidability Proof



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .

Summary of Undecidability Proof



Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Summary of Undecidability Proof



Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.

Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Compactness Theorem

Let Γ be a set of sentences of predicate logic. If all finite subsets of Γ are satisfiable, then Γ is satisfiable.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and Completeness of Predicate Logic

Undecidability of Predicate Logic

Compactness of Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Proof of Compactness Theorem

Assume Γ is not satisfiable.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Proof of Compactness Theorem

Assume Γ is not satisfiable.

We thus have $\Gamma \models \perp$.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Proof of Compactness Theorem

Assume Γ is not satisfiable.

We thus have $\Gamma \models \perp$.

Via completeness, we have $\Gamma \vdash \perp$.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Proof of Compactness Theorem

Assume Γ is not satisfiable.

We thus have $\Gamma \models \perp$.

Via completeness, we have $\Gamma \vdash \perp$.

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset $\Delta \subset \Gamma$ of premises.



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Proof of Compactness Theorem

Assume Γ is not satisfiable.

We thus have $\Gamma \models \perp$.

Via completeness, we have $\Gamma \vdash \perp$.

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset $\Delta \subset \Gamma$ of premises.

Thus, $\Delta \vdash \perp$, and $\Delta \models \perp$ via soundness.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Reachability not Expressible in Predicate Logic

There is no predicate logic formula $\phi_{G,u,v}$ with u and v as its only free variables and R as its only predicate symbol, such that $\phi_{G,u,v}$ holds iff there is a path from u to v in G .



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Let ψ be a sentence of predicate logic such that for any natural number $n \geq 1$ there is a model of ψ with at least n elements. Then ψ has a model with infinitely many elements.

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).



Contents

Predicate Logic: Motivation, Syntax, Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?

Homeworks and Next Week Plan?

Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;
- Applications of FoL.



Contents

Predicate Logic:
Motivation, Syntax,
Proof Theory

Need for Richer Language

Predicate Logic as Formal
Language

Proof Theory of Predicate
Logic

Quantifier Equivalences

Semantics of Predicate
Logic

Soundness and
Completeness of
Predicate Logic

Undecidability of
Predicate Logic

Compactness of
Predicate Calculus

Homeworks and Next
Week Plan?



Chapter 1c

Advanced Predicate Logic

Discrete Mathematics II

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen
Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM

Contents

Advanced Predicate
Logic

Nguyen An Khuong,
Huynh Tuong Nguyen







- Propositional logic can easily handle simple declarative statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in DMII.

- Propositional logic can also handle combinations of such statements such as:

Example

Student Hung enrolled in Tutorial 1, *and* student Cuong is enrolled in Tutorial 2.

- But:* How about statements with “*there exists...*” or “*every...*” or “*among...*”?

What is needed?



Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

What is this statement about?

- Being a student
- Being an instructor
- Being younger than somebody else

These are *properties* of elements of a *set* of objects.

We express them in predicate logic using *predicates*.



Example

Every student is younger than some instructor.

- $S(An)$ could denote that An is a student.
- $I(Binh)$ could denote that Binh is an instructor.
- $Y(An, Binh)$ could denote that An is younger than Binh.



Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

We use the predicate S to denote student-hood.

How do we express “*every student*”?

We need *variables* that can stand for constant values, and a *quantifier* symbol that denotes “*every*”.



Example

Every student is younger than *some* instructor.

Using variables and quantifiers, we can write:

$$\forall x(S(x) \rightarrow (\exists y(I(y) \wedge Y(x, y)))).$$

Literally: For every x , if x is a student, then there is some y such that y is an instructor and x is younger than y .

Another Example



English

Not all birds can fly.

Predicates

$B(x)$: x is a bird

$F(x)$: x can fly

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\neg(\forall x(B(x) \rightarrow F(x)))$$

A Third Example



English

Every girl is younger than her mother.

Predicates

$G(x)$: x is a girl

$M(x, y)$: y is x 's mother

$Y(x, y)$: x is younger than y

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$



The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x \forall y (G(x) \wedge M(x, y) \rightarrow Y(x, y))$$

Note that y is only introduced to denote the mother of x .

If everyone has exactly one mother, the predicate $M(x, y)$ is a function, when read from right to left.

We introduce a function symbol m that can be applied to variables and constants as in

$$\forall x (G(x) \rightarrow Y(x, m(x)))$$

A Drastic Example



English

An and Binh have the same maternal grandmother.

The sentence in predicate logic without functions

$$\forall x \forall y \forall u \forall v (M(y, x) \wedge M(An, y) \wedge \\ M(v, u) \wedge M(Binh, v) \rightarrow x = u)$$

The same sentence in predicate logic with functions

$$m(m(An)) = m(m(Binh))$$



Syntax: We formalize the language of predicate logic, including scoping and substitution.

Proof theory: We extend natural deduction from propositional to predicate logic

Semantics: We describe models in which predicates, functions, and formulas have meaning.

Further topics: Soundness/completeness (beyond scope of module), undecidability, incompleteness results, compactness results, extensions





At any point in time, we want to describe the features of a particular “world”, using predicates, functions, and constants. Thus, we introduce for this world:

- a set of predicate symbols \mathcal{P}
- a set of function symbols \mathcal{F}
- a set of constant symbols \mathcal{C}



Every function symbol in \mathcal{F} and predicate symbol in \mathcal{P} comes with a fixed arity, denoting the number of arguments the symbol can take.

Special case

Function symbols with arity 0 are called *constants*.



$$t ::= x \mid c \mid f(t, \dots, t)$$

where

- x ranges over a given set of variables **var**,
- c ranges over nullary function symbols in \mathcal{F} , and
- f ranges over function symbols in \mathcal{F} with arity $n > 0$.



If n is nullary, f is unary, and g is binary, then examples of terms are:

- $g(f(n), n)$
- $f(g(n, f(n)))$



If $0, 1, \dots$ are nullary, s is unary, and $+$, $-$ and $*$ are binary, then

$$*(-(2, +(s(x), y)), x)$$

is a term.

Occasionally, we allow ourselves to use infix notation for function symbols as in

$$(2 - (s(x) + y)) * x$$



$$\phi ::= P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n) \mid (\neg \phi) \mid (\phi \wedge \phi) \mid (\phi \vee \phi) \mid \\ (\phi \rightarrow \phi) \mid (\forall x \phi) \mid (\exists x \phi)$$

where

- $P \in \mathcal{P}$ is a predicate symbol of arity $n \geq 1$,
- t_i are terms over \mathcal{F} and
- x is a variable.



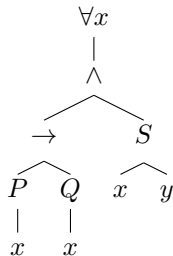
Just like for propositional logic, we introduce convenient conventions to reduce the number of parentheses:

- $\neg, \forall x$ and $\exists x$ bind most tightly;
- then \wedge and \vee ;
- then \rightarrow , which is right-associative.



$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

has parse tree



Another Example

Every son of my father is my brother.

Predicates

$S(x, y)$: x is a son of y

$B(x, y)$: x is a brother of y

Functions

m : constant for “me”

$f(x)$: father of x

The sentence in predicate logic

$$\forall x(S(x, f(m)) \rightarrow B(x, m))$$

Does this formula hold?





Equality is a common predicate, usually used in infix notation.

$$= \in \mathcal{P}$$

Example

Instead of the formula

$$= (f(x), g(x))$$

we usually write the formula

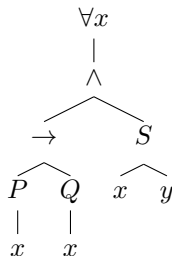
$$f(x) = g(x)$$



Consider the formula

$$\forall x((P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)) \wedge S(x, y))$$

What is the relationship between variable “binder” x and occurrences of x ?

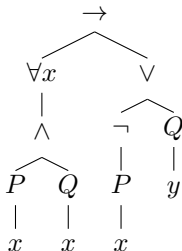




Consider the formula

$$(\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))$$

Which variable *occurrences* are free; which are bound?





Variables are *placeholders*. Replacing them by terms is called *substitution*.

Definition

Given a variable x , a term t and a formula ϕ , we define $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$ to be the formula obtained by replacing each free occurrence of variable x in ϕ with t .

Example

$$\begin{aligned} [x \Rightarrow f(x, y)](\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) &\rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y)) \\ &= \forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x)) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y)) \end{aligned}$$



Instead of

$$[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$$

the textbook uses the notation

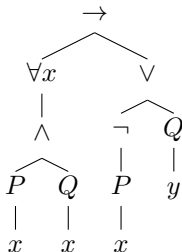
$$\phi[t/x]$$

(we find the order of arguments in the latter notation hard to remember)

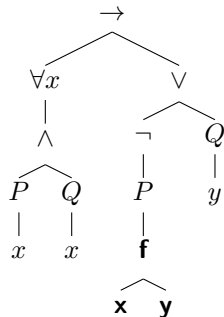
Example as Parse Tree



$$\begin{aligned} & [x \Rightarrow f(x, y)]((\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(x) \vee Q(y))) \\ &= (\forall x(P(x) \wedge Q(x))) \rightarrow (\neg P(f(x, y)) \vee Q(y)) \end{aligned}$$



Example as Parse Tree



Capturing in $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$

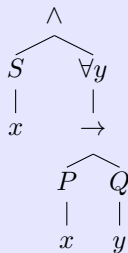


Problem

t contains variable y and x occurs under the scope of $\forall y$ in ϕ

Example

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$





Definition

Given a term t , a variable x and a formula ϕ , we say that t is free for x in ϕ if no free x leaf in ϕ occurs in the scope of $\forall y$ or $\exists y$ for any variable y occurring in t .

Free-ness as precondition

In order to compute $[x \Rightarrow t]\phi$, we demand that t is free for x in ϕ .

What if not?

Rename the bound variable!

Example of Renaming



$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall y(P(x) \rightarrow Q(y)))$$

\Downarrow

$$[x \Rightarrow f(y, y)](S(x) \wedge \forall z(P(x) \rightarrow Q(z)))$$

\Downarrow

$$S(f(y, y)) \wedge \forall z(P(f(y, y)) \rightarrow Q(z))$$





Relationship between propositional and predicate logic

If we consider propositions as nullary predicates, propositional logic is a sub-language of predicate logic.

Inheriting natural deduction

We can translate the rules for natural deduction in propositional logic directly to predicate logic.

Example

$$\frac{\phi \quad \psi}{\phi \wedge \psi} [\wedge i]$$

Built-in Rules for Equality



$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$



We show:

$$f(x) = g(x) \vdash h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$$

using

$$\frac{}{t = t} [= i] \qquad \frac{t_1 = t_2 \quad [x \Rightarrow t_1]\phi}{[x \Rightarrow t_2]\phi} [= e]$$

- | | | |
|---|---------------------|-------------|
| 1 | $f(x) = g(x)$ | premise |
| 2 | $h(f(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= i$ |
| 3 | $h(g(x)) = h(f(x))$ | $= e \ 1,2$ |

Rules for Universal Quantification



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi} [\forall x e]$$

Example



$$\frac{\forall x \phi}{[x \Rightarrow t] \phi} [\forall x e]$$

We prove: $F(g(Duong)), \forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x)) \vdash \neg M(g(Duong))$

- | | | |
|---|--|---------------------|
| 1 | $F(g(Duong))$ | premise |
| 2 | $\forall x(F(x) \rightarrow \neg M(x))$ | premise |
| 3 | $F(g(Duong)) \rightarrow \neg M(g(Duong))$ | $\forall x e 2$ |
| 4 | $\neg M(g(Duong))$ | $\rightarrow e 3,1$ |

Rules for Universal Quantification



If we manage to establish a formula ϕ about a fresh variable x_0 , we can assume $\forall x\phi$.

$$\frac{\boxed{\begin{array}{c} x_0 \\ \vdots \\ [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \end{array}}}{\forall x\phi} [\forall x i]$$

Example



$$\begin{array}{c} x_0 \\ \vdots \\ [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \end{array}$$

$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \forall xP(x) \vdash \forall xQ(x)$ via $\forall x\phi$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\forall xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \text{ e } 1$
4	$P(x_0)$	$\forall x \text{ e } 2$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow \text{ e } 3,4$
6	$\forall xQ(x)$	$\forall x \text{ i } 3-5$

Rules for Existential Quantification



$$\frac{[x \Rightarrow t]\phi}{\exists x \phi} [\exists x i]$$

$$\frac{\begin{array}{c} \exists x \phi \\ \boxed{\begin{array}{c} x_0 \quad [x \Rightarrow x_0]\phi \\ \vdots \\ \chi \end{array}} \end{array}}{\chi} [\exists e]$$

Example



$$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x)), \exists xP(x) \vdash \exists xQ(x)$$

1	$\forall x(P(x) \rightarrow Q(x))$	premise
2	$\exists xP(x)$	premise
3	$x_0 \quad P(x_0)$	assumption
4	$P(x_0) \rightarrow Q(x_0)$	$\forall x \ e \ 1$
5	$Q(x_0)$	$\rightarrow \ e \ 4,3$
6	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ i \ 5$
7	$\exists xQ(x)$	$\exists x \ e \ 2,3-6$

Examples of Quantifier Equivalences



$$\neg\forall x\phi \dashv\vdash \exists x\neg\phi$$

$$\neg\exists x\phi \dashv\vdash \forall x\neg\phi$$

$$\exists x\exists y\phi \dashv\vdash \exists y\exists x\phi$$

Assume x is not free in ψ :

$$\forall x\phi \wedge \psi \dashv\vdash \forall x(\phi \wedge \psi)$$

$$\exists x(\psi \rightarrow \phi) \dashv\vdash \psi \rightarrow \exists x\phi$$





Definition

Let \mathcal{F} contain function symbols and \mathcal{P} contain predicate symbols. A model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ consists of:

- ① A non-empty set A , the *universe*;
- ② for each nullary function symbol $f \in \mathcal{F}$ a concrete element $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$;
- ③ for each $f \in \mathcal{F}$ with arity $n > 0$, a concrete function $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$;
- ④ for each $P \in \mathcal{P}$ with arity $n > 0$, a set $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$.



Let $\mathcal{F} = \{e, \cdot\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Example (continued)



- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Some Elements of A

- 10001
- ϵ
- $1010 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} 1100 = 10101100$
- ϵ
- $000 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} \epsilon = 000$



Interpretation of equality

Usually, we require that the equality predicate $=$ is interpreted as same-ness.

Extensionality restriction

This means that allowable models are restricted to those in which $a =^{\mathcal{M}} b$ holds if and only if a and b are the same elements of the model's universe.

Example (continued)



- ① Let A be the set of binary strings over the alphabet $\{0, 1\}$;
- ② let $e^{\mathcal{M}} = \epsilon$, the empty string;
- ③ let $\cdot^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \cdot^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ is the concatenation of the strings s_1 and s_2 ; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} s_2$ iff s_1 is a prefix of s_2 .

Equality in \mathcal{M}

- $000 =^{\mathcal{M}} 000$
- $001 \neq^{\mathcal{M}} 100$



Let $\mathcal{F} = \{z, s\}$ and $\mathcal{P} = \{\leq\}$.

Let model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ be defined as follows:

- ① Let A be the set of natural numbers;
- ② let $z^{\mathcal{M}} = 0$;
- ③ let $s^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $s(n) = n + 1$; and
- ④ let $\leq^{\mathcal{M}}$ be defined such that $n_1 \leq^{\mathcal{M}} n_2$ iff the natural number n_1 is less than or equal to n_2 .

How To Handle Free Variables?



Idea

We can give meaning to formulas with free variables by providing an environment (lookup table) that assigns variables to elements of our universe:

$$l : \mathbf{var} \rightarrow A.$$

Environment extension

We define environment extension such that $l[x \mapsto a]$ is the environment that maps x to a and any other variable y to $l(y)$.



The model \mathcal{M} satisfies ϕ with respect to environment l , written $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$:

- in case ϕ is of the form $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$, if the result (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) of evaluating t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n with respect to l is in $P^{\mathcal{M}}$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\forall x \psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for all $a \in A$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\exists x \psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for some $a \in A$;



- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds or $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds and $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds; and
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds.



If a formula ϕ has no free variables, we call ϕ a *sentence*.

$\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds or does not hold regardless of the choice of l . Thus we write $\mathcal{M} \models \phi$ or $\mathcal{M} \not\models \phi$.



Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Entailment

$\Gamma \models \psi$ iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$ holds for all $\phi \in \Gamma$, then $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.

Satisfiability of Formulas

ψ is satisfiable iff there is some model \mathcal{M} and some environment l such that $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ holds.

Satisfiability of Formula Sets

Γ is satisfiable iff there is some model \mathcal{M} and some environment l such that $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$, for all $\phi \in \Gamma$.



Let Γ be a possibly infinite set of formulas in predicate logic and ψ a formula.

Validity

ψ is valid iff for all models \mathcal{M} and environments l , we have $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$.

The Problem with Predicate Logic



Entailment ranges over models

Semantic entailment between sentences: $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$ requires that in *all* models that satisfy $\phi_1, \phi_2, \dots, \phi_n$, the sentence ψ is satisfied.

How to effectively argue about all possible models?

Usually the number of models is infinite; it is very hard to argue on the semantic level in predicate logic.

Idea from propositional logic

Can we use natural deduction for showing entailment?



$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \models \psi$$

iff

$$\phi_1, \dots, \phi_n \vdash \psi$$

proven by Kurt Gödel, in 1929 in his doctoral dissertation



Decision problems

A *decision problem* is a question in some formal system with a yes-or-no answer.

Decidability

Decision problems for which there is an algorithm that returns “yes” whenever the answer to the problem is “yes”, and that returns “no” whenever the answer to the problem is “no”, are called *decidable*.

Decidability of satisfiability

The question, whether a given propositional formula is satisfiable, is decidable.



Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable (here only as sketch).
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.



Informally

Can we line up copies of the cards such that the top row spells out the same sequence as the bottom row?

Formally

Given a finite sequence of pairs $(s_1, t_1), (s_2, t_2), \dots, (s_k, t_k)$ such that all s_i and t_i are binary strings of positive length, is there a sequence of indices i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n with $n \geq 1$ such that the concatenations $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_n}$ and $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_n}$ are equal?

Undecidability of Post Correspondence Problem



Turing machines

Basic abstract symbol-manipulating devices that can simulate in principle any computer algorithm. The input is a string of symbols on a *tape*, and the machine “accepts” the input string, if it reaches one of a number of *accepting states*.

Termination of Programs is Undecidable

It is undecidable, whether program with input terminates.

Proof idea

For a Turing machine with a given input, construct a PCP such that a solution of the PCP exists if and only if the Turing machine accepts the solution.



Bits as Functions

Represent bits 0 and 1 by functions f_0 and f_1 .

Strings as Terms

Represent the empty string by a constant e .

The string $b_1b_2 \dots b_l$ corresponds to the term

$$f_{b_l}(f_{b_{l-1}} \dots (f_{b_2}(f_{b_1}(e))) \dots)$$



Let C be the problem

s_1	s_2	\dots	s_k
t_1	t_2	\dots	t_k

Idea

$P(s, t)$ holds iff there is a sequence of indices (i_1, i_2, \dots, i_m) such that s is $s_{i_1} s_{i_2} \dots s_{i_m}$ and t is $t_{i_1} t_{i_2} \dots t_{i_m}$.



$\phi = \phi_1 \wedge \phi_2 \rightarrow \phi_3$, where

$$\phi_1 = \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(e), f_{t_i}(e))$$

$$\phi_2 = \forall v \forall w (P(v, w) \rightarrow \bigwedge_{i=1}^k P(f_{s_i}(v), f_{t_i}(w)))$$

$$\phi_3 = \exists z P(z, z)$$



So Far

Post correspondence problem is undecidable.

Constructed ϕ_C for Post correspondence problem C .

To Show

$\models \phi_C$ holds if and only if C has a solution.

Proof

Proof via construction of ϕ_C . Formally construct an interpretation of strings and show that whenever there is a solution, the formula ϕ_C holds and vice versa.



Theorem

The decision problem of validity in predicate logic is undecidable: no program exists which, given any language in predicate logic and any formula ϕ in that language, decides whether $\models \phi$.

Proof

- Establish that the Post Correspondence Problem (PCP) is undecidable
- Translate an arbitrary PCP, say C , to a formula ϕ .
- Establish that $\models \phi$ holds if and only if C has a solution.
- Conclude that validity of pred. logic formulas is undecidable.



Let Γ be a set of sentences of predicate logic. If all finite subsets of Γ are satisfiable, then Γ is satisfiable.

Proof of Compactness Theorem



Assume Γ is not satisfiable.

We thus have $\Gamma \models \perp$.

Via completeness, we have $\Gamma \vdash \perp$.

The proof is finite, thus only uses a finite subset $\Delta \subset \Gamma$ of premises.

Thus, $\Delta \vdash \perp$, and $\Delta \models \perp$ via soundness.

Reachability not Expressible in Predicate Logic



There is no predicate logic formula $\phi_{G,u,v}$ with u and v as its only free variables and R as its only predicate symbol, such that $\phi_{G,u,v}$ holds iff there is a path from u to v in G .



Let ψ be a sentence of predicate logic such that for any natural number $n \geq 1$ there is a model of ψ with at least n elements. Then ψ has a model with infinitely many elements.



Homeworks

It is recommended that you should do as much as you can ALL marked exercises in [2, Sect. 2.8] (notice that sample solutions for these exercises are available in [3]). For this lecture, the following are recommended exercises [2]:

- 2.1: 1a); 2a)
- 2.2: 6
- 2.3: 1a); 1b); 6a); 6b); 6c); 7b); 9b); 9c); 13d)
- 2.4: 2); 3); 11a); 11c); 12e); 12f); 12h); 12k)
- 2.5: 1c); 1e).

Next Weeks?

- Exercises Session;
- Applications of FoL.



Contents

Natural Deduction in
Propositional Logic:
Electing Puzzle

Expressing
specifications by
Predicate Logic:
Protocol Requirements

Chapter 1d

Examples on Using Proposition and Predicate Logic

Discrete Mathematics II

(Materials drawn from **Chapter 2** in:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen
Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM



① Natural Deduction in Propositional Logic: Electing Puzzle

② Expressing specifications by Predicate Logic: Protocol Requirements

Electing Puzzle



Contents

Natural Deduction in
Propositional Logic:
Electing Puzzle

Expressing
specifications by
Predicate Logic:
Protocol Requirements

- Four men and four women are nominated for two positions.
- Exactly one man and one woman are elected.
- The men are A, B, C, D and the women are E, F, G, H . We know:
 - if neither A nor E won, then G won
 - if neither A nor F won, then B won
 - if neither B nor G won, then C won
 - if neither C nor F won, then E won.
- Who were the two people elected?

Huth and Ryan [2], Exercises 2.1.5: Protocol Requirements

- The following sentences are taken from the **RFC3157 Internet Task-force Document ‘Securely Available Credentials – Requirements.’**
- Specify it in predicate logic, defining predicate symbols as appropriate:
 - a. An attacker can persuade a server that a successful login has occurred, even if it hasn't.
 - b. An attacker can overwrite someone else's credentials on the server.
 - c. All users enter passwords instead of names.
 - d. Credential transfer both to and from a device **MUST** be supported.
 - e. Credentials **MUST NOT** be forced by the protocol to be present in cleartext at any device other than the end user's.
 - f. The protocol **MUST** support a range of cryptographic algorithms, including symmetric and asymmetric algorithms, hash algorithms, and MAC algorithms.
 - g. Credentials **MUST** only be downloadable following user authentication or else only downloadable in a format that requires completion of user authentication for deciphering.
 - h. Different end user devices **MAY** be used to download, upload, or manage the same set of credentials.



Contents

Natural Deduction in
Propositional Logic:
Electing Puzzle

Expressing
specifications by
Predicate Logic:
Protocol Requirements



Contents

Natural Deduction in
Propositional Logic:
Electing Puzzle

Expressing
specifications by
Predicate Logic:
Protocol Requirements

- a. An attacker can persuade a server that a successful login has occurred, even if it hasn't:

$$\phi := \exists a \exists s ((\neg \text{loggedIn}(a, s)) \longrightarrow (\text{canPersuade}(a, s))).$$

- b. An attacker can overwrite someone else's credentials on the server: $\phi := \exists u \exists c \exists s \exists d ((\neg \text{ownsCredentials}(u, c)) \longrightarrow \text{canWrite}(u, c, s, d)).$



[Contents](#)

[Warm-up questions](#)

[Program Verification](#)

[Homeworks](#)

Chapter 1e

Predicate Logic and Program Verification

Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)

(Materials drawn from:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

Nguyen An Khuong, Huynh Tuong Nguyen
Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM

Contents

- ① Warm-up questions
- ② Program Verification
- ③ Homeworks



Contents

Warm-up questions

Program Verification

Homeworks

Warm-up questions

- a) Are there expressions in Predicate Logic that do not evaluate to TRUE or FALSE? If so, give an example.

Ans.: Terms, unlike predicates and formulas, do not evaluate to the distinguished symbols true or false. Examples of terms include: a , a constant (or 0-ary function); x , a variable; $f(t)$, a unary function f applied to a term t .

- b) Is $p(a) \longrightarrow \exists x.p(x)$ a valid formula?

Ans.: Yes

- c) How do you represent a propositional variable (as used in Propositional Logic) in a Predicate Logic formula?

Ans.: As a 0-ary predicate.

- d) Fermat's Last Theorem is the name of the statement in number theory that: *It is impossible to separate any power higher than the second into two like powers.*

Or, more precisely:

If an integer n is greater than 2, then the equation $x^n + y^n = z^n$ has no solutions in positive integers x, y , and z .
Formulate the above statement in Predicate Logic with Equality?



Warm-up questions (cont'd): An answer to Fermat's Last Theorem Formulation



[Contents](#)

[Warm-up questions](#)

[Program Verification](#)

[Homeworks](#)

$$\forall n. integer(n) \wedge n > 2 \longrightarrow \forall x, y, z. integer(x) \wedge integer(y) \wedge integer(z) \wedge x > 0 \wedge y > 0 \wedge z > 0 \longrightarrow x^n + y^n \neq z^n.$$



[Contents](#)

[Warm-up questions](#)

[Program Verification](#)

[Homeworks](#)

- Below is a function written in an imperative programming language to perform *binary search*, by returning TRUE iff the array a contains the value e and FALSE otherwise, under the assumption that the input range is sorted.

```
bool binarySearch ( int [] a, int l, int u, int e) {  
  if (l > u) return false ;  
  else {  
    int m = (l + u) div 2;  
    if (a[m] == e) return true ;  
    else if (a[m] < e) return binarySearch (a, m + 1, u, e);  
    else return binarySearch (a, l, m - 1, e);  
  }  
}
```

- As a first step towards determining whether an implementation (such as that in the function above) fulfills its specification, the specification has to be formalized. We do so in terms of *preconditions* and *postconditions*.



- A *precondition* specifies what should be true upon entering the function (i.e., under what inputs the function is expected to work).
- The *postcondition* is a formula G whose free variables include only the formal parameters and the special variable rv representing the return value of the function.
- The postcondition relates the function's output (the return value rv) to its input (the parameters).

Prob: Formulate in Predicate Logic the precondition and the postcondition for `binarySearch`.

Program Verification (cont'd): Answer



- First precondition: $0 \leq l \wedge u < |a|$

- Second precondition:

$$\forall i, j. \text{integer}(i) \wedge \text{integer}(j) \wedge 0 \leq i \leq j < |a| \longrightarrow a[i] \leq a[j]$$

- Postcondition: $rv \longleftrightarrow \exists i. l \leq i \leq u \wedge a[i] = e$



1. Do all HWs which have not been done in previous lectures.
2. Try to understand deeply the following notations/terms
arity, expression, term, formula, atomic formula, sentence,
clause, Backus Naur form (BNF), parse tree, precondition,
postcondition, binding priorities, provability, witness, scope,
bound, verification, model checking, Hoare triple, and their
other related notation/terms.
3. Do exercise 1.5.14 on page 89 in [2].
4. Consider the following program

```
temp := x
x := y
y := temp
```

What does this tinny program do? Find preconditions,
postconditions and verify its correctness?



Contents

[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Chapter 1f

Program Verification

Mathematical Modeling (CO2011)

(Materials drawn from:

“Michael Huth and Mark Ryan. *Logic in Computer Science: Modelling and Reasoning about Systems*, 2nd Ed., Cambridge University Press, 2006.”)

Nguyen An Khuong
Faculty of Computer Science and Engineering
University of Technology, VNU-HCM

Contents

- 1 Core Programming Language
- 2 Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- 3 Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- 4 Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- 5 Correctness of the Factorial Function
- 6 Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- 7 Homeworks



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks



- One way of checking the correctness of programs is to explore the possible states that a computation system can reach during the execution of the program.
- Problems with this *model checking* approach:
 - Models become infinite.
 - Satisfaction/validity becomes undecidable.
- In this lecture, we cover a proof-based framework for program verification.

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

Characteristics of the Approach

Proof-based instead of model checking
Semi-automatic instead of automatic
Property-oriented not using full specification
Application domain fixed to sequential programs using integers
Interleaved with development rather than a-posteriori verification



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

Reasons for Program Verification



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

Documentation. Program properties formulated as theorems can serve as concise documentation

Time-to-market. Verification prevents/catches bugs and can reduce development time

Reuse. Clear specification provides basis for reuse

Certification. Verification is required in safety-critical domains such as nuclear power stations and aircraft cockpits



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

Convert informal description R of *requirements* for an application domain into formula ϕ_R .

Write program P that meets ϕ_R .

Prove that P satisfies ϕ_R .

Each step provides risks and opportunities.



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- ⑦ Homeworks

Motivation of Core Language

- Real-world languages are quite large; many features and constructs
- Verification framework would exceed time we have in CS5209
- Theoretical constructions such as Turing machines or lambda calculus are too far from actual applications; too low-level
- Idea: use subset of Pascal/C/C++/Java
- Benefit: we can study useful “realistic” examples



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks



Expressions come as arithmetic expressions E :

$$E ::= n \mid x \mid (-E) \mid (E + E) \mid (E - E) \mid (E * E)$$

and boolean expressions B :

$$B ::= \text{true} \mid \text{false} \mid (!B) \mid (B \& B) \mid (B \parallel B) \mid (E < E)$$

Where are the other comparisons, for example $==$?



Commands cover some common programming idioms. Expressions are components of commands.

$$C ::= x = E \mid C; C \mid \text{if } B \{C\} \text{ else } \{C\} \mid \text{while } B \{C\}$$

Example



Consider the factorial function:

$$\begin{aligned} 0! &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} 1 \\ (n+1)! &\stackrel{\text{def}}{=} (n+1) \cdot n! \end{aligned}$$

We shall show that after the execution of the following Core program, we have $y = x!$.

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks



Contents

Core Programming
Language

**Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness**

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness**
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- ⑦ Homeworks

Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- We need to be able to say that at the end, y is $x!$



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- We need to be able to say that at the end, y is x !
- That means we require a *post-condition* $y = x$!



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.

Example: $x > 0$



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.

Example: $x > 0$

- Do we have to prove the postcondition in one go?



Example

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- Do we need pre-conditions, too?

Yes, they specify what needs to be the case before execution.

Example: $x > 0$

- Do we have to prove the postcondition in one go?
No, the postcondition of one line can be the pre-condition of the next!





Shape of assertions

$$\langle\phi\rangle P \langle\psi\rangle$$

Informal meaning

If the program P is run in a state that satisfies ϕ , then the state resulting from P 's execution will satisfy ψ .

Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

(Slightly Trivial) Example

Informal specification

Given a positive number x , the program P calculates a number y whose square is less than x .

Assertion

$$\langle x > 0 \rangle P \langle y \cdot y < x \rangle$$

Example for P

$$y = 0$$

Our first Hoare triple

$$\langle x > 0 \rangle y = 0 \langle y \cdot y < x \rangle$$



(Slightly Less Trivial) Example



Same assertion

$$(x > 0) \ P \ (y \cdot y < x)$$

Another example for P

```
y = 0;
while (y * y < x) {
  y = y + 1;
}
y = y - 1;
```

Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks



Definition

Let \mathcal{F} contain function symbols and \mathcal{P} contain predicate symbols. A model \mathcal{M} for $(\mathcal{F}, \mathcal{P})$ consists of:

- 1 A non-empty set A , the *universe*;
- 2 for each nullary function symbol $f \in \mathcal{F}$ a concrete element $f^{\mathcal{M}} \in A$;
- 3 for each $f \in \mathcal{F}$ with arity $n > 0$, a concrete function $f^{\mathcal{M}} : A^n \rightarrow A$;
- 4 for each $P \in \mathcal{P}$ with arity $n > 0$, a set $P^{\mathcal{M}} \subseteq A^n$.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)



The model \mathcal{M} satisfies ϕ with respect to environment l , written $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$:

- in case ϕ is of the form $P(t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n)$, if the result (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) of evaluating t_1, t_2, \dots, t_n with respect to l is in $P^{\mathcal{M}}$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\forall x \psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for all $a \in A$;
- in case ϕ has the form $\exists x \psi$, if the $\mathcal{M} \models_{l[x \mapsto a]} \psi$ holds for some $a \in A$;

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Recall: Satisfaction Relation (continued)

- in case ϕ has the form $\neg\psi$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi$ does not hold;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \vee \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds or $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds;
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \wedge \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds and $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds; and
- in case ϕ has the form $\psi_1 \rightarrow \psi_2$, if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_1$ holds whenever $\mathcal{M} \models_l \psi_2$ holds.





Definition

An assertion of the form $\langle\phi\rangle P \langle\psi\rangle$ is called a Hoare triple.

- ϕ is called the precondition, ψ is called the postcondition.
- A state of a Core program P is a function l that assigns each variable x in P to an integer $l(x)$.
- A state l satisfies ϕ if $\mathcal{M} \models_l \phi$, where \mathcal{M} contains integers and gives the usual meaning to the arithmetic operations.
- Quantifiers in ϕ and ψ bind only variables that do *not* occur in the program P .

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Example

Let $l(x) = -2$, $l(y) = 5$ and $l(z) = -1$. We have:

- $l \models \neg(x + y < z)$
- $l \not\models y = x \cdot z < z$
- $l \not\models \forall u(y < u \rightarrow y \cdot z < u \cdot z)$





Definition

We say that the triple $\langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ is *satisfied under partial correctness* if, for all states which satisfy ϕ , the state resulting from P 's execution satisfies ψ , provided that P terminates.

Notation

We write $\models_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Extreme Example

$\langle\phi\rangle$ `while true { x = 0; }` $\langle\psi\rangle$

holds for all ϕ and ψ .





Definition

We say that the triple $\langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ is *satisfied under total correctness* if, for all states which satisfy ϕ , P is guaranteed to terminate and the resulting state satisfies ψ .

Notation

We write $\models_{\text{tot}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$.

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

Back to Factorial



Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```



Contents

Core Programming
LanguageHoare Triples; Partial
and Total CorrectnessProof Calculus for
Partial CorrectnessPractical Aspects of
Correctness ProofsCorrectness of the
Factorial FunctionProof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$



Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)



Consider Fac1:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

- $\models_{\text{tot}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\not\models_{\text{tot}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (x \geq 0) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$
- $\models_{\text{par}} (\top) \text{ Fac1 } (y = x!)$

Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

**Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness**

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness**
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness
- ⑦ Homeworks

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)

We are looking for a proof calculus that allows us to establish

$$\vdash_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$$

where

- $\models_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ holds whenever $\vdash_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ (correctness), and
- $\vdash_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ holds whenever $\models_{\text{par}} \langle \phi \rangle P \langle \psi \rangle$ (completeness).

Rules for Partial Correctness

$$\frac{\langle\phi\rangle C_1 \langle\eta\rangle \quad \langle\eta\rangle C_2 \langle\psi\rangle}{\langle\phi\rangle C_1; C_2 \langle\psi\rangle} [\text{Composition}]$$



Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

[Assignment]

$$\llbracket [x \rightarrow E] \psi \rrbracket \quad x = E \quad \llbracket \psi \rrbracket$$

Examples

Let P be the program $x = 2$.

Using

$$\frac{}{([x \rightarrow E]\psi) \ x = E \ (\psi)} \text{[Assignment]}$$

we can prove:

- $(2 = 2) \ P \ (x = 2)$
- $(2 = 4) \ P \ (x = 4)$
- $(2 = y) \ P \ (x = y)$
- $(2 > 0) \ P \ (x > 0)$



More Examples

Let P be the program $x = x + 1$.

Using

$$\frac{}{([x \rightarrow E]\psi) \ x = E \ (\psi)} \text{[Assignment]}$$

we can prove:

- $(x + 1 = 2) \ P \ (x = 2)$
- $(x + 1 = y) \ P \ (x = y)$



Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)

$$\langle \phi \wedge B \rangle C_1 \langle \psi \rangle \quad \langle \phi \wedge \neg B \rangle C_2 \langle \psi \rangle$$

[If-statement]

$$\langle \phi \rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle \psi \rangle$$

$$\langle \psi \wedge B \rangle C \langle \psi \rangle$$

[Partial-while]

$$\langle \psi \rangle \text{ while } B \{ C \} \langle \psi \wedge \neg B \rangle$$



Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

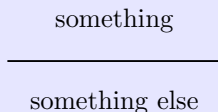
Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

$$\frac{\vdash_{AR} \phi' \rightarrow \phi \quad (\phi) C (\psi) \quad \vdash_{AR} \psi \rightarrow \psi'}{(\phi') C (\psi')} \text{[Implied]}$$

Proofs have tree shape

All rules have the structure



As a result, all proofs can be written as a tree.

Practical concern

These trees tend to be very wide when written out on paper. Thus we are using a linear format, called *proof tableaux*.





$$\frac{(\phi) \ C_1 \ (\eta) \quad (\eta) \ C_2 \ (\psi)}{(\phi) \ C_1; C_2 \ (\psi)} \text{[Composition]}$$

Shape of rule suggests format for proof of $C_1; C_2; \dots; C_n$:

(ϕ_0)
 $C_1;$
 (ϕ_1) justification
 $C_2;$
 \vdots
 (ϕ_{n-1}) justification
 $C_n;$
 (ϕ_n) justification

[Contents](#)[Core Programming Language](#)[Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness](#)[Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness](#)[Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs](#)[Correctness of the Factorial Function](#)[Proof Calculus for Total Correctness](#)[Homeworks](#)



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

Overall goal

Find a proof that at the end of executing a program P , some condition ψ holds.

Common situation

If P has the shape $C_1; \dots; C_n$, we need to find the weakest formula ψ' such that

$$\langle \psi' \rangle C_n \langle \psi \rangle$$

Terminology

The weakest formula ψ' is called *weakest precondition*.

Example

$(y < 3)$

$(y + 1 < 4)$ Implied

$y = y + 1;$

$(y < 4)$ Assignment



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

Another Example



Can we claim $u = x + y$ after $z = x; z = z + y; u = z; ?$

(\top)

$(x + y = x + y)$ Implied

$z = x;$

$(z + y = x + y)$ Assignment

$z = z + y;$

$(z = x + y)$ Assignment

$u = z;$

$(u = x + y)$ Assignment

Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

An Alternative Rule for If

We have:

$$\frac{\langle \phi \wedge B \rangle C_1 \langle \psi \rangle \quad \langle \phi \wedge \neg B \rangle C_2 \langle \psi \rangle}{\langle \phi \rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle \psi \rangle} \text{[If-statement]}$$

Sometimes, the following *derived rule* is more suitable:

$$\frac{\langle \phi_1 \rangle C_1 \langle \psi \rangle \quad \langle \phi_2 \rangle C_2 \langle \psi \rangle}{\langle (B \rightarrow \phi_1) \wedge (\neg B \rightarrow \phi_2) \rangle \text{ if } B \{ C_1 \} \text{ else } \{ C_2 \} \langle \psi \rangle} \text{[If-stmt 2]}$$



Example

Consider this implementation of Succ:

```
a = x + 1;  
if (a - 1 == 0) {  
  y = 1;  
} else {  
  y = a;  
}
```

Can we prove $\langle \top \rangle \text{Succ} \langle y = x + 1 \rangle$?



Another Example

⋮

if ($a - 1 == 0$) {

$\langle 1 = x + 1 \rangle$

If-Statement 2

$y = 1;$

$\langle y = x + 1 \rangle$

Assignment

} else {

$\langle a = x + 1 \rangle$

If-Statement 2

$y = a;$

$\langle y = x + 1 \rangle$

Assignment

}

$\langle y = x + 1 \rangle$

If-Statement 2



Another Example

$\langle \top \rangle$ $\langle (x + 1 - 1 = 0 \rightarrow 1 = x + 1) \wedge$ $(\neg(x + 1 - 1 = 0) \rightarrow x + 1 = x + 1) \rangle$	Implied
$a = x + 1;$ $\langle (a - 1 = 0 \rightarrow 1 = x + 1) \wedge$ $(\neg(a - 1 = 0) \rightarrow a = x + 1) \rangle$	Assignment
if ($a - 1 == 0$) { $\langle 1 = x + 1 \rangle$	If-Statement 2
$y = 1;$ $\langle y = x + 1 \rangle$	Assignment
} else { $\langle a = x + 1 \rangle$	If-Statement 2
$y = a;$ $\langle y = x + 1 \rangle$	Assignment



Recall: Partial-while Rule

$$\frac{(\psi \wedge B) \ C \ (\psi)}{(\psi) \ \text{while } B \ \{ C \} \ (\psi \wedge \neg B)} \text{[Partial-while]}$$



Factorial Example



Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

We shall show that the following Core program Fac1 meets this specification:

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

Thus, to show:

$$\langle \top \rangle \text{ Fac1 } \langle y = x! \rangle$$

Partial Correctness of Fac1

⋮

$\langle y = z! \rangle$

while (**z** **!=** **x**) {

$\langle y = z! \wedge z \neq x \rangle$

$\langle y \cdot (z + 1) = (z + 1)! \rangle$

z = **z** + 1;

$\langle y \cdot z = z! \rangle$

y = **y** * **z**;

$\langle y = z! \rangle$

}

$\langle y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x) \rangle$

$\langle y = x! \rangle$

Invariant

Implied

Assignment

Assignment

Partial-while

Implied



Contents

Core Programming
Language

Hoare Triples; Partial
and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for
Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of
Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the
Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness

Homeworks

Partial Correctness of Fac1

$\langle \top \rangle$

$\langle (1 = 0!) \rangle$

Implied

$y = 1;$

$\langle y = 0! \rangle$

Assignment

$z = 0;$

$\langle y = z! \rangle$

Assignment

$\text{while } (z \neq x) \{$

\vdots

$\}$

$\langle y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x) \rangle$

Partial-while

$\langle y = x! \rangle$

Implied





Contents

Core Programming
LanguageHoare Triples; Partial
and Total CorrectnessProof Calculus for
Partial CorrectnessPractical Aspects of
Correctness ProofsCorrectness of the
Factorial Function**Proof Calculus for
Total Correctness**

Homeworks

- ① Core Programming Language
- ② Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness
- ③ Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness
- ④ Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs
- ⑤ Correctness of the Factorial Function
- ⑥ Proof Calculus for Total Correctness**
- ⑦ Homeworks



- The only source of non-termination is the `while` command.
- If we can show that the value of an integer expression decreases in each iteration, but never becomes negative, we have proven termination.
Why? Well-foundedness of natural numbers
- We shall include this argument in a new version of the `while` rule.

Contents

Core Programming Language

Hoare Triples; Partial and Total Correctness

Proof Calculus for Partial Correctness

Practical Aspects of Correctness Proofs

Correctness of the Factorial Function

Proof Calculus for Total Correctness

Homeworks

Rules for Partial Correctness (continued)

$$\frac{(\psi \wedge B) \ C \ (\psi)}{(\psi) \ \mathbf{while} \ B \ \{ \ C \} \ (\psi \wedge \neg B)} \text{[Partial-while]}$$

$$\frac{(\psi \wedge B \wedge 0 \leq E = E_0) \ C \ (\psi \wedge 0 \leq E < E_0)}{(\psi \wedge 0 \leq E) \ \mathbf{while} \ B \ \{ \ C \} \ (\psi \wedge \neg B)} \text{[Total-while]}$$



Factorial Example (Again!)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant E ?



Factorial Example (Again!)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant E ?

E must strictly decrease in the loop, but not become negative.



Factorial Example (Again!)

```
y = 1;  
z = 0;  
while (z != x) { z = z + 1; y = y * z; }
```

What could be a good variant E ?

E must strictly decrease in the loop, but not become negative.

Answer:

$$x - z$$



Total Correctness of Fac1

```
⋮
⋮
( $y = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z$ )
while (  $z \neq x$  ) {
    ( $y = z! \wedge z \neq x \wedge 0 \leq x - z = E_0$ )
    ( $y \cdot (z + 1) = (z + 1)! \wedge 0 \leq x - (z + 1) < E_0$ )
     $z = z + 1$ ;
    ( $y \cdot z = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z < E_0$ )
     $y = y * z$ ;
    ( $y = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z < E_0$ )
}
( $y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x)$ )
( $y = x!$ )
```

Invariant
Implied

Assignment

Assignment

Total-while
Implied



Total Correctness of Fac1

$\langle x \leq 0 \rangle$	
$\langle (1 = 0! \wedge 0 \leq x - 0) \rangle$	Implied
<code>y = 1;</code>	
$\langle y = 0! \wedge 0 \leq x - 0 \rangle$	Assignment
<code>z = 0;</code>	
$\langle y = z! \wedge 0 \leq x - z \rangle$	Assignment
<code>while (z != x) {</code>	
<code> :</code>	
<code>}</code>	
$\langle y = z! \wedge \neg(z \neq x) \rangle$	Total-while
$\langle y = x! \rangle$	Implied



Do as much as possible (at least ALL marked) problems given in Section 4.6 in [2]

